Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "REMINDER", "CAUTION" and "WARNING" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. The hint types are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Sustainable Development

As a pure electric passenger vehicle, BYD SEAL 6 DM-i is an environmentally friendly product.For the environmental protection information of your vehicle, please inquire through the https://reach.bydeurope.com.

Protecting the environment is everyone's responsibility. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Contact us

If you have any questions about policies or procedures or need additional assist, please contact our Customer Service Center.

Email: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

If you need 24/7 road assistance or contact the customer service center (9: 00-18: 00, Monday to Saturday), please call: 00800-10203000

Illustration Index

Safety

Instrument Cluster

Controller Operation

Using and Driving

In-Vehicle Devices

Maintenance

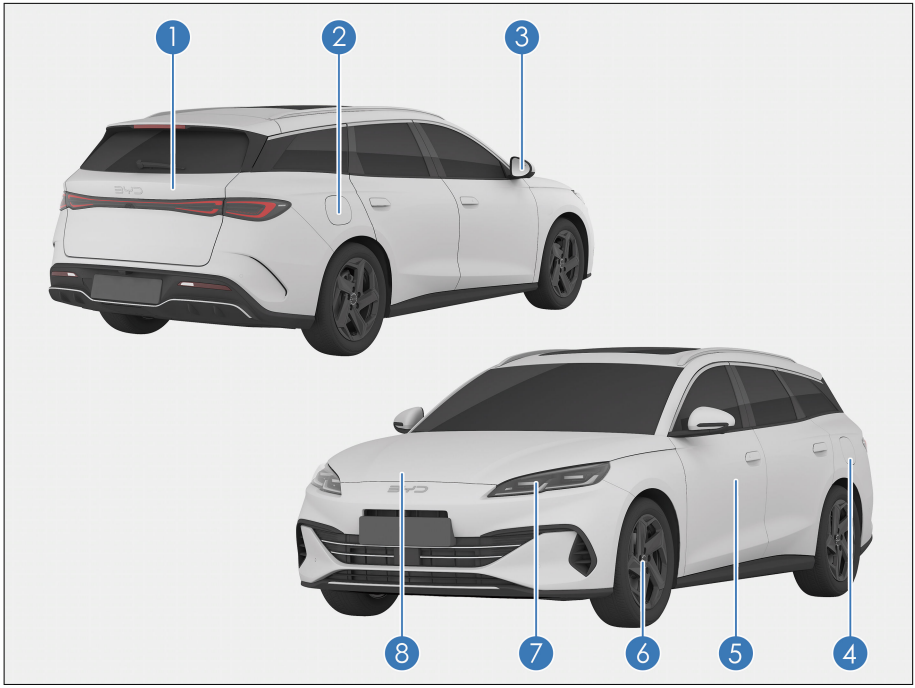
When Faults Occur

Specifications

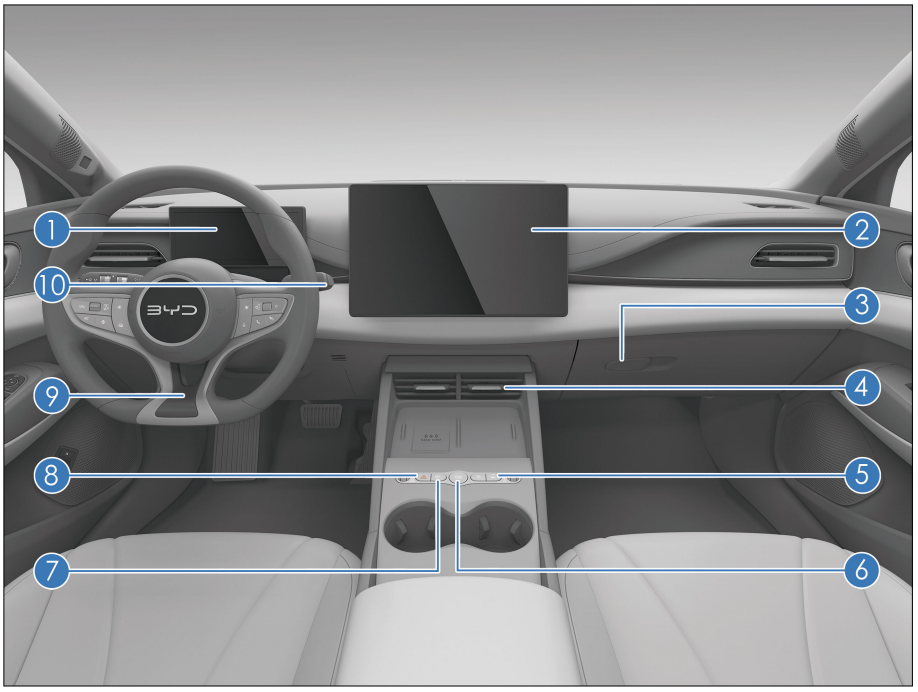
Abbreviations

Illustration Index

Exterior

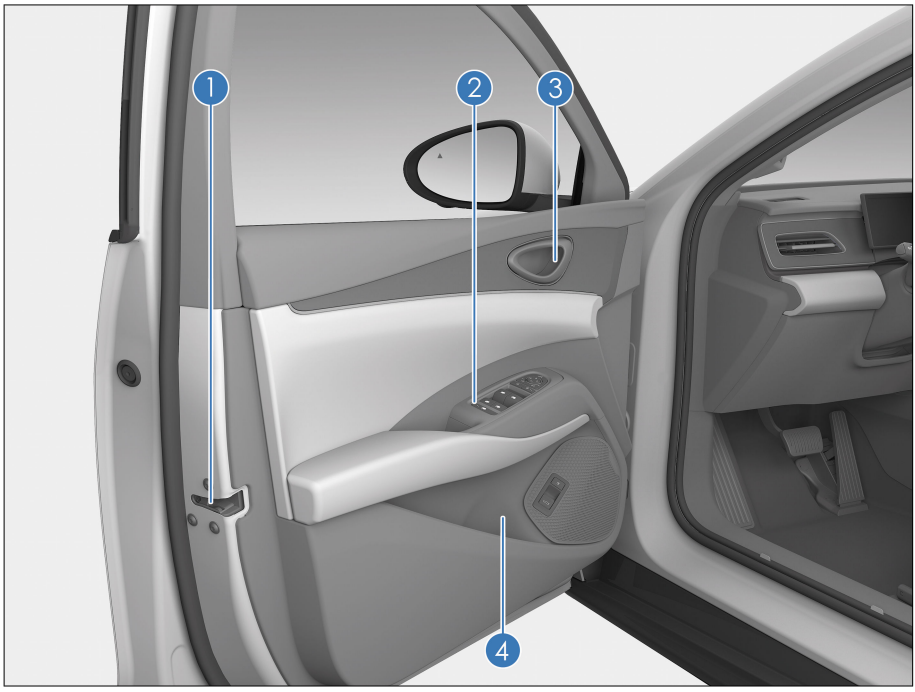


Dashboard



1	Instrument Cluster ***P40***	6	START/STOP Button ***P122***
2	Multimedia Touchscreen ***P196***	7	Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) ***P130***
3	Glove box ***P206***	8	Hazard Warning Light ***P83***
4	Vents ***P203***	9	Steering Wheel ***P71***
5	A/C Panel ***P198***	10	Gearshift Controls ***P126***

Doors



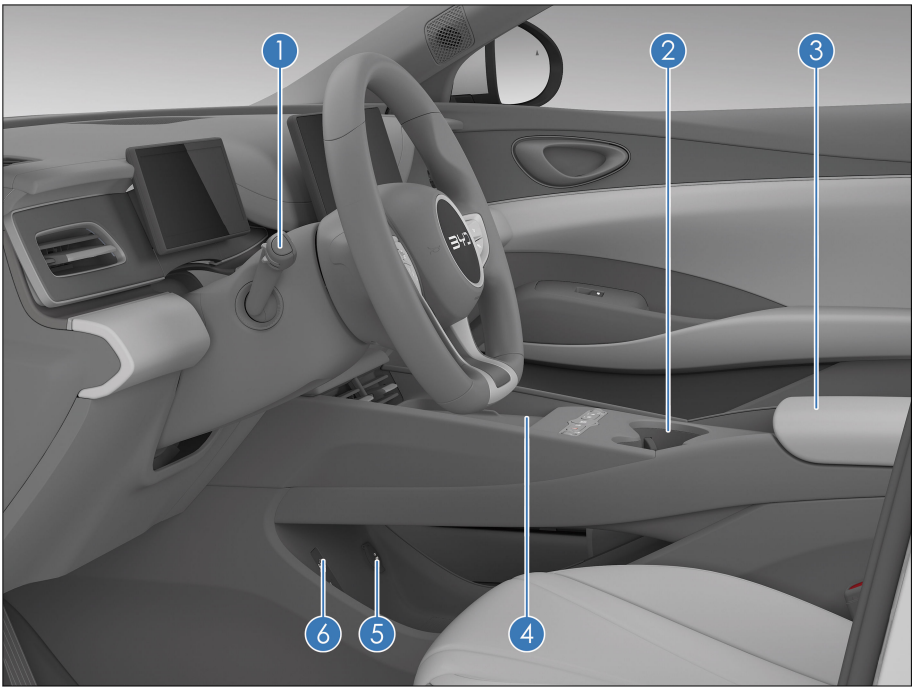
1 Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key ***P64***

2 Driver's Door Switch Group ***P81***

3 Interior door handle ***P57***

4 Door Bins ***P207***

Central Locking



1 Light Switches ***P79***

2 Cup Holder ***P206***

3 Center Console Cubby ***P206***

4 Wireless Phone Charger ***P209***

5 12V Power ***P208***

6 USB Ports ***P208***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering, or collisions. Please read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

- BYD has highly emphasized that driver and occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle.
- Before and during the driving of the vehicle,, ensure all passengers in the vehicle fasten the seat belts. Failure to do so increases the risk of injury in case of an accident.
- The seat belts on the vehicle are mainly designed according to the body size of adults, and are not suitable for children. Please select an appropriate child safety seat according to the age and body size of children (See ***P***).
- If the seat belt is damaged or dysfunctional, immediately contact a BYD authorized service provider for confirmation and handling. Do not use the corresponding seat before the contact.
- It is recommended that the child be seated in the rear seat and that the seat belt and appropriate child safety seat be used. In emergency braking or collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to sitting on someone's lap, for there is insufficient protection.

Emergency Locking Retractor Function

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- Occupants can move freely when the vehicle is running smoothly and the seat belts are pulled out or retracted slowly.
- If the seat belt locks due to fast retraction, allow it to retract for a distance of 15mm and slowly pull it back.

Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function of Seat Belt

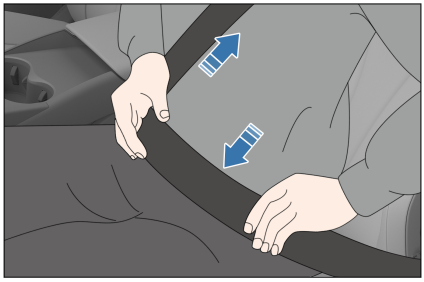
When the vehicle has a serious frontal collision and meets the triggering conditions of the pre-tightening device, the pre-tightening device quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to enhance the protection of passengers. The pretensioner limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

Using Seat Belts

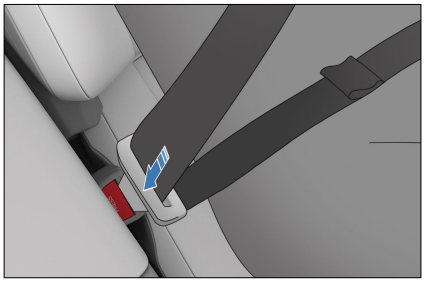
1.Adjust the seat position and seatback angle properly.

2. Adjust the position of the seat belt properly.

- Keep a proper sitting posture and pull the seat belt out to wear it diagonally from the shoulder to the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck. Keep the belt lap part as close as possible to the hip bone.
- The lap belt must be kept as low as possible to the hip, not in the lap position.



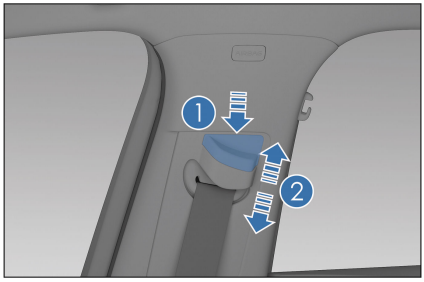
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. The height of the front seat belts can be adjusted for optimum comfort and protection.

①Press the seat belt height adjuster release button.

②Move it up or down to the desired height and then release it.



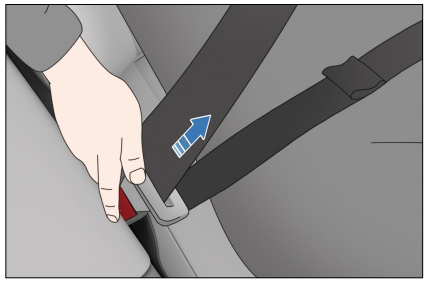
5. Pull the belt firmly to verify whether it is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible across the hip to prevent any injury caused by pressing against the abdomen in case of an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unbuckling Seat Belts.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt cannot retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out to check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- Seat belts can only be used by one person at a time. Do not share a seat belt with two or more people, even children.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt

WARNING

protection performs best when the seatback is upright.

- Make sure that no seat belt or itsspring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the preloading function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women should also fasten their seat belt properly. Particularly, be sure to position the lap belt as low across the hip as possible to prevent serious injury.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, please ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should ensure that all

WARNING

occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.

- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

REMINDER

- For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should remind occupants to wear seat belts properly.
- The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go off and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder indicator

  When any seat's belt is not fastened, the unfastened seat belt indicator flashes.

- Display of unfastened belt's seat

  When a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator for the corresponding seat will light up and remain on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.

- Unfastened seat belt reminder

  If the driver or front passenger (if the passenger seat is occupied) has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated

with the corresponding seat light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to remind the driver and the occupant.

- When the driver's or passenger's safety belt is fully fastened, the main indicator light of the unfastened safety belt goes out.

WARNING

- If the above functions are abnormal or fail, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat before the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened or in emergency braking or collision, passengers are more likely to be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered.

Airbags

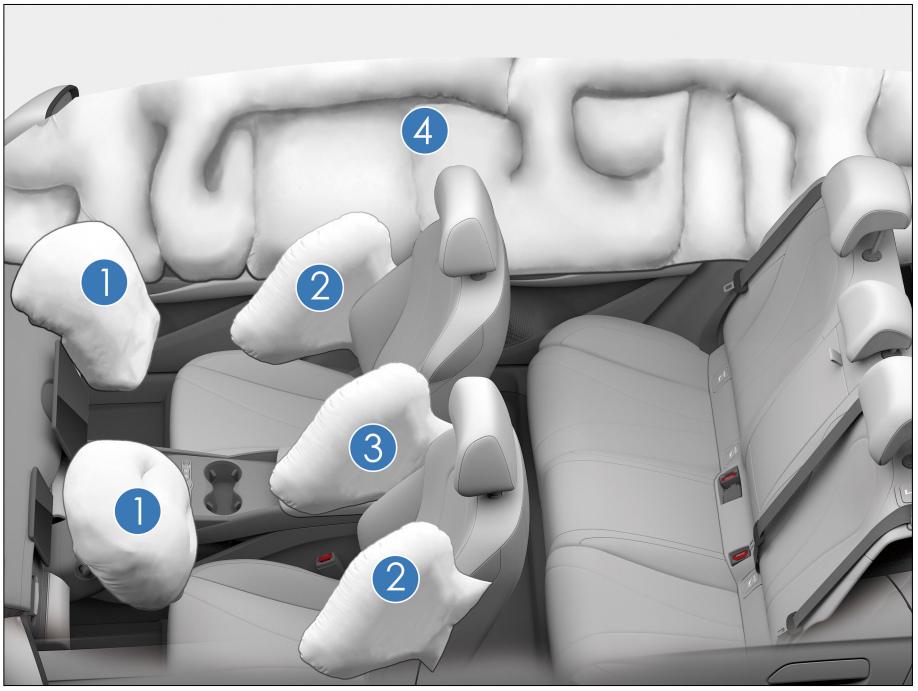
Airbag Overview

- The airbag is a part of the supplementary restraint system (SRS), which is a supplement to the seat and safety belt. When the vehicle has a serious collision accident and reaches the system deployment conditions, the airbag will deploy quickly, and together with the safety belt, it will provide additional protection for the driver's head and chest, so as to reduce the probability of injury or even casualty.
- According to the collision type, the airbag is generally divided into frontal airbag and side airbag. The frontal airbag includes the driver airbag and front passenger airbag, and the side airbag includes the front side airbag, the front centre airbag and curtain airbag.
- The airbag system cannot replace the seat belt. It is an integral part of the whole passive safety protection system of the vehicle. and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble the airbag components.
- It is recommended to use genuine seat covers of BYD. Other seat covers may lead to degradation of airbag performance or passenger injuries. Do not place anything between the side airbag and the passenger.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of the seat equipped with side airbag.
- After a collision, although the airbag module is not deployed and the pre-tensioner seat belt is not locked, the airbag computer may be encrypted to protect the passengers from high voltage. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Airbag Types



①Driver and front passenger airbags

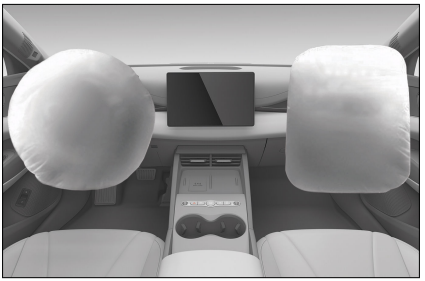
②Front side airbag

③Front far side airbag

④Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

If your vehicle is equipped with driver and front passenger airbags, when the electronic control unit (ECU) of the airbag system detects a moderate to severe front impact during driving and the triggering conditions are met, the airbags deploy.



WARNING

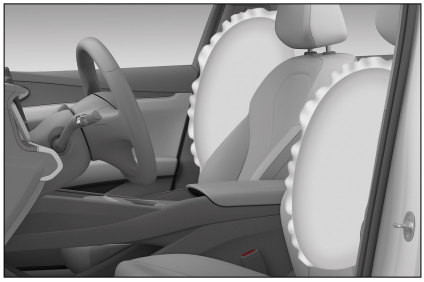
- Accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, must not be installed on airbag covers

WARNING

or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Front Far Side Airbag

- The front far-end side airbag is installed on the inner edge of the driver's seat and is marked with the word "AIRBAG". When the side or frontal offset impact of moderate to severe degree during driving reaches the trigger condition of the far-end side airbag, the far-end side airbags will be deployed to help protect the head and shoulder of the driver and front passengers, so as to reduce the degree of injury to them.



WARNING

- If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace the seat backrest cover by yourself. Inappropriate seat backrest cover replacement or covering hinders the deployment of seat side airbags in the event of a collision.
- If the impact occurs on the front passenger side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.

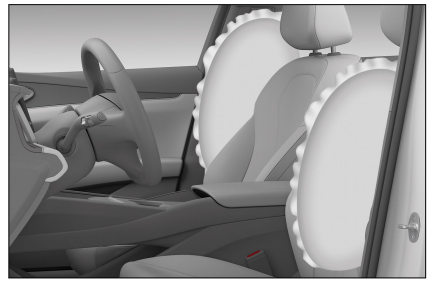
WARNING

- In order to obtain the best protection of the far side airbag on the driver's seat, the occupant must wear a seat belt and sit upright against the seat back.

Seat Side Airbags

Front passenger side airbags

If the model is equipped with one side airbag for the front left seat and one for the front right seat, (as shown in the figure) the airbag is mounted on the outside of each front seat backrest where the word "AIRBAG" is marked.



- When the airbag triggering conditions are met due to a moderate to severe side impact during driving, the airbag deploys to assist in protecting the chest of the passenger on the impacted side to reduce the degree of injury.
- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- If the collision occurs on the passenger side, the airbag on the passenger side deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- In order to obtain the best protection from the seat side airbag, the passenger must fasten the seat belt and sit upright against the seat back.

Side Curtain Airbags

- If the model is equipped with left and right side airbags (as shown in the figure airbags are installed at the connection between the side wall and the roof, and the words "Curtain Airbag" are marked on the A-pillar shield, B-pillar shield, and C-pillar shield). when the vehicle suffers a medium to severe lateral collision triggering conditions for side curtain air bags are met, air bags will deploy to assist in protecting the head of the driver/passenger on the side suffering the collision to reduce injury.

- In the event of a side impact, the airbags on both sides will deploy.
- In order to obtain the best protection from the side airbag, the passenger must fasten the seat belt and sit upright against the seat back.

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacles, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, side collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: Decision is made by comparing the deceleration curve, generated in the collision and obtained by the ECU, and the set value.
  If signals, such as the deceleration curve generated and measured in the collision, are lower than the respective reference values preset in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle may have been seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

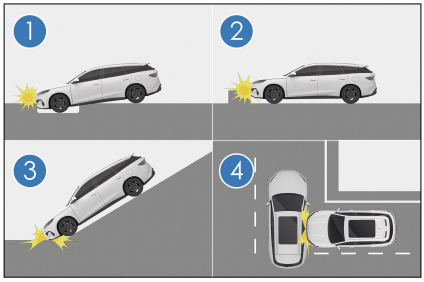
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

②The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



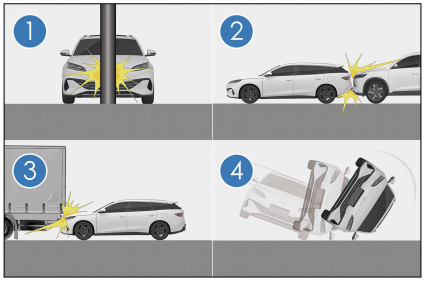
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

①The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

②The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

②The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

②The vehicle rolls over.

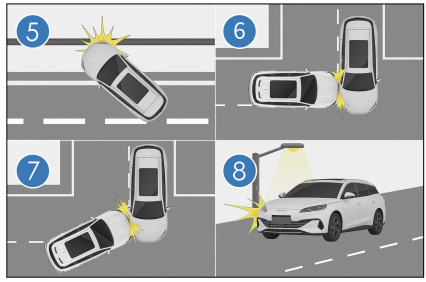


⑤The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other car models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective driver protection.
- After the airbag system is deployed, the high-temperature gas of the airbag will be discharged from the airbag exhaust hole. Avoid touching its components. Please keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel. Otherwise, there is a possibility of scalding when the airbag is deployed.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.

WARNING

- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the hub cover of the steering wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard or the surface of A, B, and C pillar trims and seat side airbag. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.
- Do not place other trims or articles within the action range of any side curtain airbag (e.g., windshields, side door glass, A-pillar shields, roof, B-pillar shields, C-pillar shields and auxiliary handles). Otherwise, trims or objects will be thrown out due to the strong force released when side curtain airbags deploy, or will cause failure of side curtain airbags to deploy properly, resulting in serious or even life-threatening injuries.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions and replacement dates.

WARNING

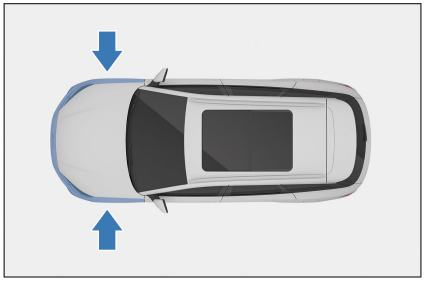
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.

WARNING

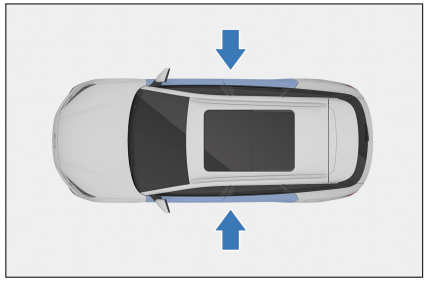
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

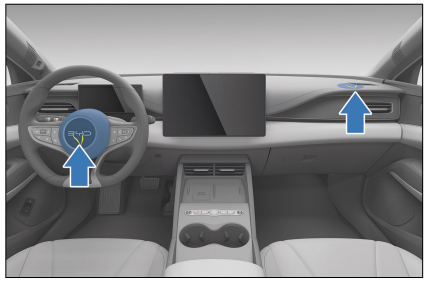
- All airbags have been deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- An impact to a vehicle door (shaded part in the figure) in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- An impact to a vehicle door (shaded part in the figure) in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.

Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint System Classification

- Choose an appropriate child safety seat according to the age and figure of the child. A child who cannot use

a protection device due to body size shall sit in the second seat and have the seat belt fastened properly.

- Please correctly fix the child restraint system not used to a seat. Do not place it on a passenger seat or in the trunk arbitrarily.

WARNING

- Be sure to use a seat belt or child restraint system for a child based on his/her age and size, so as to effectively protect the child in an accident or emergency stop. Holding a child in arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child may be crushed against the windshield or between you and the cabin.
- Vehicles with side curtain airbags: Even if the child is placed in a child restraint, do not allow the child to rest his or her head or any part of his or her body on the door, seat, front and rear pillars, or roof side member (deployment area of the side curtain airbag). Otherwise, when the side curtain airbag is deployed, its strong impact may cause serious injury to children and even endanger their lives.
- Please install the CRS correctly according to the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer. Otherwise, it may cause serious or even life-threatening injuries to children in the event of emergency braking or an accident.
- Do not let children stand in the vehicle or kneel on the seat when the vehicle is running, otherwise they will be vulnerable to serious physical injury or even

WARNING

life-threatening in the event of emergency braking or collision.

- BYD strongly recommends that the vehicle equipped the CRS for children. Researches indicate that it is safer to install child restraints on the rear seats than the front seats.

Installing a Child Seat

It is recommended that children are seated on a rear outboard seat position, and according to the child seat installation instruction provided by the child seat manufacturer.

- Where possible, the child seat should be secured with the top tether strap.
- The backrest of the child seat must lay as flat as possible against the vehicle seat backrest.
- If required, adjust the seat backrest angle so that the child seat is put against the backrest.
- Once it has been installed, if the child seat is touching the head restraint and therefore cannot be positioned flat against the backrest, raise the head restraint all the way up, or remove it and stow safely in the vehicle.

Observe the installing instructions provided by CRS factory.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Child restraint fitted to front passenger seat

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in

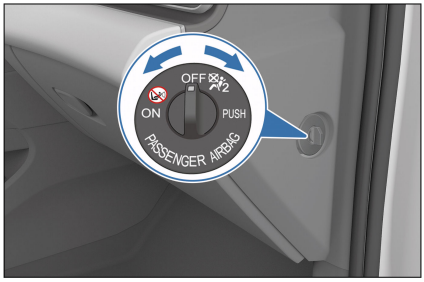
front of it, as this may result in death or serious injury to the child.

- When using a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is fully rearward away from the airbag.

  1. Adjust the front passenger seat rearward so that a child sitting in the front passenger seat has no contact with the interior of the vehicle.

  2. Adjust the front passenger seat back so that it makes firm contact with the child restraint.

- When using a rear-facing child seat, turn the front passenger airbag switch to the OFF position to disable the front passenger seat airbag. See ***P*** for details.

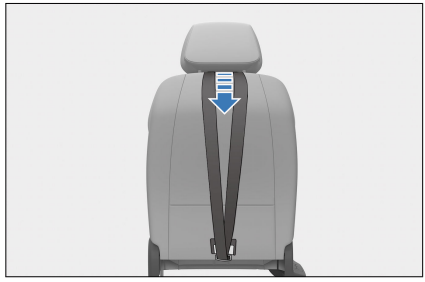


WARNING

- Once the rear-facing child restraint is removed from the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag switch must be turned to the ON position to activate the front passenger seat airbag.
- Never use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat with the front passenger airbag activated.
- Failure to follow the advice given, or the instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer, can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.
- A forward facing passenger (child or adult) must not be seated in the front passenger seat with the passenger airbag deactivated.
- When using a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is fully rearward away from the airbag.

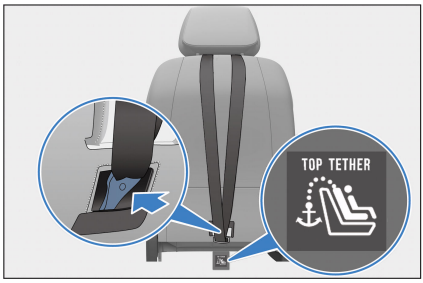
- The passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIX/i-Size fixings. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see the illustration) located on the seat cushion, directly in front of the associated anchorages.

- The back of the passenger seat is equipped with a top tether anchor point.



- When the child restraint is installed on a front passenger seat with a top

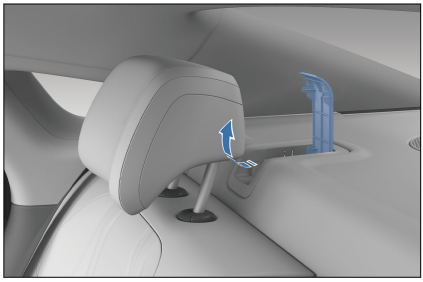
tether, pass it through the gap in the headrest compartment.



Installation in the rear seat

- Open the anchorage lever trim cover and install the child restraint system to the seat.

- Open the fixed anchor support cover.



CAUTION

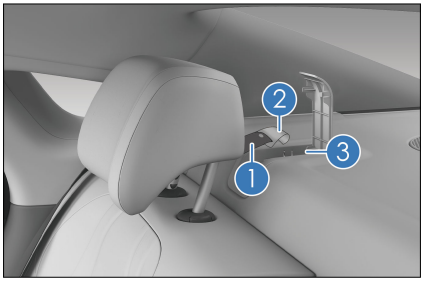
- The anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.

- Lift the headrest, engage the hook tightly to the anchor at the back of the backrest, and tighten the top tether so that it is fastened.

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Fixed anchor support



- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seat, The front seats can be adjusted forward, and the front seatback angle can be rotated, to ensure there is no contact of the front seats to the child.
- The head restraint can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint system.
  - Do not use a rear-facing CRS on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the impact of quick deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in serious injury or even be life-threatening to the child.

WARNING

- When a child restraint is a booster cushion only, without a seatback, the head restraint must never be removed, and must be positioned at the appropriate height.

The following table shows the installation options for ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system at the ISOFIX or i-Size anchorage points of the individual vehicle seating locations.

	Seating position					
		3				
	1	Front Front Passenger Airbag Activated[a])	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a)]	4[b)]	5[b)]	6[b)]
Seating position suitable for universal belt (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	YES	YES	YES	YES
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	YES	YES	No	YES
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	×	NO	NO	NO	No	NO
Largest suitable rearward-	×	NO	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3

	Seating position					
		3				
	1	Front Front Passenger Airbag Activated[a])	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a)]	4[b)]	5[b)]	6[b)]
facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)						
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	×	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3 Belt only	B2/B3

[a)] : If necessary, adjust the seatback angle of the front passenger seat to securely install the child restraint system.

[b)]: If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the rear seatback, the head restraint should be adjusted or removed.

×: Seat position not suitable for securing a child restraint system.

Recommended child restraint systems:
(Group and child stature according to ECE R129).

Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint Systems	Remarks
40-83	Dorel Europe	Maxi Cosi Pebble 360	Belted
76-105	Britax Römer	Trifix 2 i-Size	ISOFIX+TOP Tether
100-150	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size	ISOFIX and

Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint Systems	Remarks
			Belted
137-150	Graco	Booster Max R129	Belted

① 40-83 cm

② 76-105 cm

③ 100-150 cm

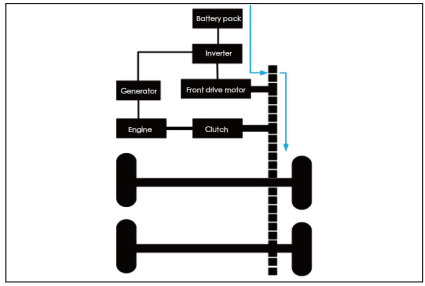
④ 137-150 cm

Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

"EV" - Electric Operating Mode:

- In pure electric operating mode, the high-voltage battery provides electric energy to drive the vehicle by the electric motor, and this mode can meet a variety of operating conditions, such as starting, reversing, idle speed, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

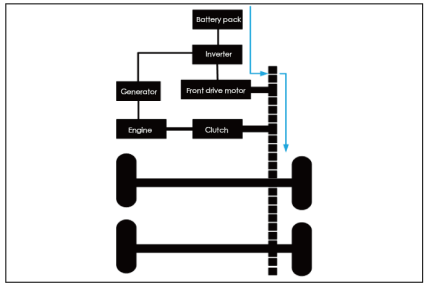


REMINDER

- Operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, high ambient temperature, low ambient temperature, and low SOC level may cause EV mode to exit temporarily.

"HEV" - Dual-Mode Working Mode:

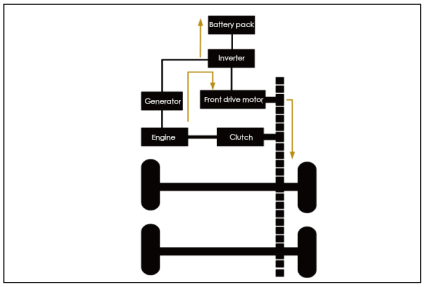
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is high or the power demand is low, the vehicle system prioritizes EV drive, without starting the engine.



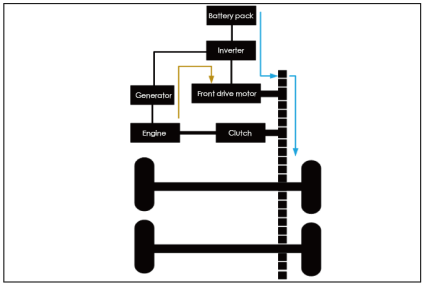
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is low or the power demand is high, the

engine starts and operates in series to meet the power demand.

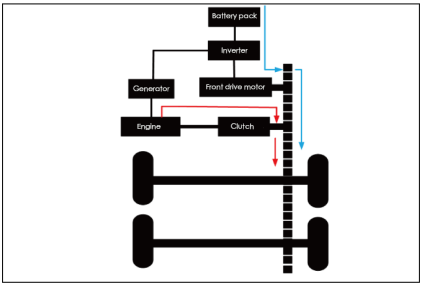
- In HEV mode, the engine supplies power to the high-voltage battery and drive motor.



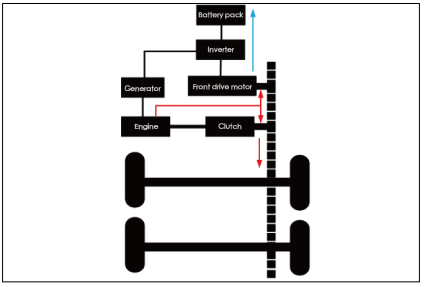
- In HEV mode, the engine and the high-voltage battery simultaneously supply power to the drive motor.



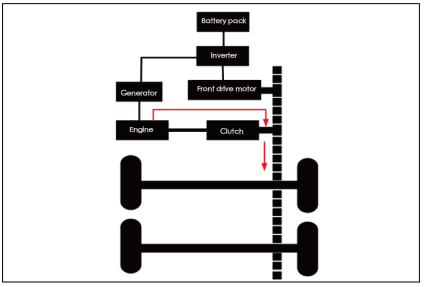
- In HEV mode, the engine starts to operate in parallel at medium and high speeds under some working conditions to improve fuel economy.
  - In HEV mode, the engine and drive motor work together to drive the vehicle.



- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and simultaneously drives the motor to generate electricity for energy recycling.



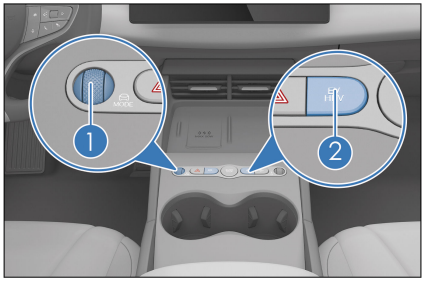
- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the drive motor rests.



Working Mode Selection of Dual-Mode (DM) System

① “MODE” button

② “EV/HEV” button



EV-ECO Drive Mode:

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Ecology, Conservation, Optimization(ECO) mode to minimize power consumption.

EV-NORMAL Drive Mode:

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched toNormal(NORMAL)to ensure ride comfort and control power consumption.

EV-SPORT Drive Mode:

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Sport(SPORT) mode to ensure the best power performance.

HEV-ECO Drive Mode:

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode for the best fuel economy.

HEV-NORMAL Drive Mode:

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Normal (NORMAL) mode to ensure ride comfort and fuel economy.

HEV-SPORT Drive Mode:

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE switch continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to SPORT mode to ensure the best power performance.

MAX EV Drive Mode:

- This mode ensures vehicle operation in EV mode only to the greatest extent.
- To switch the vehicle to the MAX EV mode with sufficient battery SOC, toggle the EV switch forward and hold for 3s until the EV indicator on the

instrument cluster turns blue. At this time, the output power of the vehicle is limited to some extent. When the battery SOC drops to a lower level, the vehicle automatically switches to the HEV-ECO mode.

CAUTION

- When MAX EV is turned on, the power demand of the vehicle will be limited to a certain extent. If higher power demand is required, it can be switched to EV/HEV mode.

Snow Mode

- Press the Snow mode button to activate/deactivate MODE button. This mode can be activated during driving on snowy, wet, or slippery road surfaces.

Precautions for Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

Precautions for Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

When the vehicle operates in hybrid synergy mode, pay attention to the following:

- The performance of the high-voltage battery degrades in low-temperature environments. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is too low, the vehicle system limits the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - When the temperature is lower than -30°C or higher than 60°C, the battery cannot be charged.
  - When the temperature is lower than -35°C or higher than 60°C, the battery cannot discharge.
- It is recommended to use the vehicle in an environment above -20°C. In the event of the above special circumstances, it is recommended to drive thevehicle by using the engine. In the event of the above special circumstances, it is recommended to drive thevehicle by using the engine.
- The optimum temperature of the battery is 25°C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the output power of the battery is limited, so the driving range of the vehicle in pure electric mode is shortened.

Attention to High-voltage and Hightemperature Components

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch the orange cable or the high-voltage battery electrode. Electric shock may cause serious or even life-threatening injuries.
- Please read all warning labels.

- The motor, coolant radiator and some other components can reach high temperatures during driving, and these components are identified with warning labels. Please carefully read and follow the instructions on these warning labels.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, wading and other situations that may cause damage to the high-pressure system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious or even life-threatening injuries.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and motor, the engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle is powered on or off, you may hear the sound (the sound of the contactor closing or opening) coming from the high-voltage components under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the indicator “OK” stays on, it indicates that the vehicle can be driven, even if the fuel engine is not started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the “P” button when parking. When “P” or “N” gear is engaged, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine maystart to charge the high-voltage battery. If the “N”, “R”, or “D” gear is engaged for a long period of time, it may cause a system failure. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure to release the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, press the "P" button to ensure that the electronic parking switch has been pulled up, take away the key, and lock all the doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and the power is completely exhausted, even the external power supply cannot be used for starts, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to press the "P" button, because when the "OK" indicator lights up but the engine stops, the vehicle can idle at a low speed (the motor can drive).
- When the "OK" indicator light is on, the vehicle will travel at a low speed without depressing the brake pedal if the shift lever is placed in the "R" or "D" gear, so please pay attention.

- It is recommended to consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to an accidentor other reasons, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- It is recommended to consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before handling the vehicle because it uses a sealed low-voltage battery.

WARNING

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Press the brake pedal and pull up the EPB switch.
  - Press the P button to shut down the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are bare wires with destroyed insulation inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.
- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a special fire extinguisher to put out the fire. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use a large amount of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade to arrive.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please tow it with all four wheels off the ground. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate

WARNING

electricity, resulting in electric leakage.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

If the vehicle is in anti-theft state and any door is opened, the system will sound an alarm and the turn signals will flash to prevent the vehicle from being stolen.

Enabling anti-theft system

1. Power off the vehicle.
2. Have all occupants exit the vehicle.
3. The anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after 8 s when all doors are locked. Make sure no passengers are in the vehicle while setting the alarm. Unlocking any door from the inside can activate the system.

Triggering the alarm

- The anti-theft alarm is triggered when:
  - Any door, trunk lid or hood is unlocked without using the smart key entry function.
  - The vehicle is in the anti-theft state. If the vehicle enters the vehicle without

a valid smart key, press the start/stop button.

Releasing the alarm

- The anti-theft alarm is released when:
  - Unlock the doors or the luggage compartment lid with a valid Smart key.
  - Carry the Smart key to unlock the door using the microswitch.
  - Using a valid NFC key to unlock the door.
  - Unlocking of the trunk lid with the Smart Key.
  - the vehicle is started remotely with the smart key; or
  - The START/STOP button is pressed with the smart key inside the vehicle.

WARNING

1 -5 Anti-theft Alarm System - Warning

- Do not modify the anti-theft system by means of alteration or addition. Otherwise, the system may fail.

Driving Password

- When the user has vehicle anti-theft requirements, put the vehicle in "P" gear, enter PAD setting→ door, window and lock interface through the central control screen, click the driving password setting item to open the driving password function according to the guidance.
- After the function is enabled, when the user brakes or engages the gear, the central control screen will pop up a window to input the password interface. The user can remove the gear disable by inputting the correct password. After the password input times reach the upper limit, the vehicle enters the anti-theft state. The anti-theft state can be removed and the normal use of the vehicle can be restored according to the prompt of the central control screen.
- When you forget your password, please click Forgot Password in the password input interface and change the password according to the prompt.
- Close the driving password. The user clicks the driving password setting item and enters the correct password to close the driving password.

CAUTION

- When operating the driving password setting, please put the vehicle in "P" gear in advance;
- The driving password is only used to unlock the remote control key or the remote control key is used to cooperate with the micro switch, and the operation of unlocking the mobile phone is not restricted;
- After the driving password is turned on, the central control screen fails when the vehicle is powered on. If the black screen cannot be input, resulting in the failure of driving, please contact the corresponding BYD authorized service center for handling.

Event Data Recorder System

Event Data Recorder System

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please read the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available at the multimedia system (Vehicle Settings → System Settings→ More → Privacy Policy).
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle Velocity:
  - Tire pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, The data from the airbag control unit can be read out to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle Data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors, rain sensor, and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.

- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote service related data

Remote monitoring services

- Remote monitoring services
- These include remote monitoring services such as remote diagnostics and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades to ensure safety (subject to owner approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other Tips:

Multimedia system

- Depending on the vehicle configuration, the user may add data to the infotainment system on his own, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for a navigation system, or data for online services.
- Depending on the vehicle configuration, vehicle personal settings can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's multimedia system network devices.
- The device's screen or audio may need to be displayed/played or transmitted to it via infotainment system.
- Additional data, such as location or vehicle information, may be transmitted by the application for some navigation system, messaging, or other third party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's multimedia system network devices.
- BYD shall not be liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control modules for further analysis as required by the operating system.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an Outward Facing Camera (OFC) which can be used to record the surroundings (dash cam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence if you turn the camera on.
- Please be aware of corresponding laws before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, i.e., second hand vehicle, or vehicle transfer by a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the multimedia system (e.g. address list, navigation system, etc.) may be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is scrapped or transferred, it is recommended that you restore the factory settings to protect your privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- On the multimedia touchscreen, tap  to turn Wi-Fi off.
- This can also be done by: Tapping System → System Settings → Interlink → WLAN → Off.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, according to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read data from the vehicle (e.g., data can be read from an airbag control unit to clarify an incident).
- According to law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data to governmental authorities in your country/region upon request, for example, during criminal investigations.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
- Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the multimedia system (Vehicle Settings → System Settings → More → Privacy Policy).

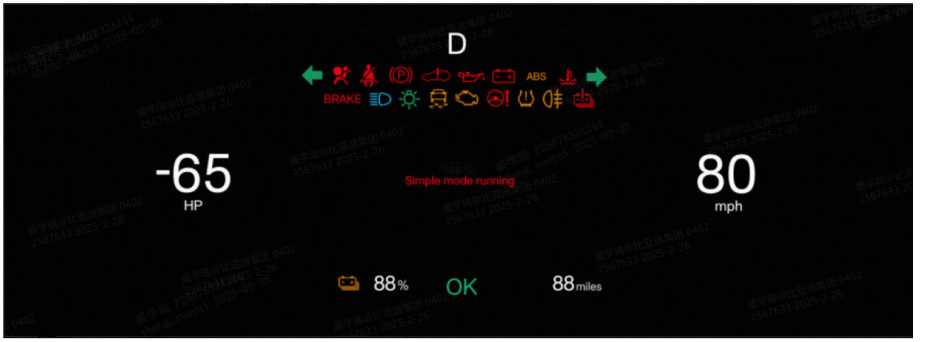
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster

1	Time	6	Power Meter
2	Driving Mode	7	Remaining driving range
3	Speedometer	8	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
4	Gear status	9	Electric driving range/oil driving range
5	Ambient temperature		

Simple Mode Gauge View



REMINDER

- In case of occasional communication delay of the instrument system, the safety instrument will automatically switch to the simple mode to ensure that the driving information can still be displayed normally without affecting the driving. After the system is normal, it will automatically exit the simple mode. If it is not restored continuously, the following operations can be tried to switch:
  1. Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
  2. Restart the vehicle after confirming that the vehicle is safe.

REMINDER

- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators and Warning Lights

	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
	Discharge indicator	OK	OK indicator
ECO	ECO indicator		Hill descend control indicator
NORMAL	NORMAL indicator	HEV	HEV Indicator
EV	EV Indicator		AVH indicator
	Driver Monitoring Assistance Indicator	MEB	MEB indicator*

	Low beam indicator		Lane Support System (LSS) Indicator*
	High beam indicator		ACC status indicator*
	HMA indicator*		ICC indicator*
	Forced EV indicator		BSD indicator*
	AVH indicator		AEB indicator (blue)*
	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)		AEB fault warning light*
	Oil life monitoring indicator		Smart key warning light
	Tire pressure fault warning light		Main alarm indicator
	ESC OFF warning light		ESC (Electronic Stability Control) fault warning light
	Low fuel warning light		Emission fault indicator
	ABS fault warning light		Driving power limit warning light
	Fault warning light of headlight		Snow mode indicator
	ACC fault warning light*		Driver monitoring system fault indicator

	Blind spot detection fault indicator*		High-voltage battery low SOC warning light
	Driver monitoring system fault indicator*		ICC indicator*
	Motor overheating warning light*		High-voltage battery fault warning light
SPORT	SPORT indicator		Automatic emergency braking warning light (red)*
	TSR indicator*		Airbag fault warning light
	Seat belt reminder indicator		Parking system fault warning light
	EPB indicator		Coolant overheating indicator
	Steering system fault warning light		High-voltage battery charging connection indicator
	Low oil pressure warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light
	Low-voltage power system fault warning light		Powertrain fault warning light
	Snow mode indicator		Economic mode indicator
	Sport mode indicator		

Warning Lights/Indicators Description

 Emission fault indicator

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Even though abnormalities in vehicle performance may not be noticed, continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- If this indicator lights up during non-self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, power it on again, start the engine and check this warning light. If this warning light is still on, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- Before the BYD authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, be careful to drive the vehicle and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.
- If the fault indicator lights up frequently, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

CAUTION

- If the vehicle is driven continuously after the emission fault warning lamp is illuminated, the vehicle's emission control system and the engine itself may be damaged.

 Low fuel warning light

This indicator is located on the fuel gauge. If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver that the fuel is about to be used up. Should this occur, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel level warning light may be on earlier than usual.

 Smart key warning light

- Press the START/STOP button. If the key is not inside the vehicle, the warning light lights up for several seconds, the speaker sounds once, and the display screen displays "No key is detected. Please confirm whether it is inside the vehicle” .
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.
- If the key is not in the vehicle, the instrument prompts "The key is not detected, please confirm whether the key is in the vehicle".

 ABS fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If the ABS (anti-lock braking system) works properly, the light goes off in a few seconds. If the system fails, it lights up again until the fault is eliminated.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas the ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning

light off), since the anti-lock braking system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.

- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Because if the brake operation is performed at this time, not only the ABS does not work, but the vehicle also becomes extremely unstable.

- If both ABS indicator and the braking system indicator come on and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is fully released, the braking force distribution system of front and rear wheels has also failed.

Tire pressure fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light lights up or flashes, the information display on the instrument cluster reads "Please check the tire pressure monitoring system" and the tire pressure is displayed as "---" on the screen, it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire indicates "abnormal signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal of the vehicle location may be disturbed or the tire pressure monitoring module may be damaged.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light flashes rapidly, and one or more values turn red in the tire pressure page on the instrument cluster information display, the corresponding tire is leaking rapidly.
- When this indicator stays on, along with one or more figures shown on the tire pressure display interface of the dashboard display screen turning yellow, it indicates low pressure in one or more tires. When one or more tires and temperature values turn yellow, the tire temperature is too high.

In any of the above cases, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

ESC Fault Warning Light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on. If ESC system works properly, this warning light turns off after a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is eliminated.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in

motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.

- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible:
  - When the power gear is in the "ON" gear, the warning lamp is not on all the time after being powered on (no self-check).
  - This warning light stays on during driving.

REMINDER

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC fault warning lamp is still on while the ABS fault warning lamp and the brake system warning lamp are on, it is recommended to immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile. Because the vehicle becomes extremely unstable when braking and the ABS does not work.

ESC OFF warning light

- With the vehicle gear at “ON”, this warning light goes out after a few seconds.
- When the "ESC OFF switch" is turned ON, the lamp shall be continuously illuminated, and the vehicle stability control system shall not function at this time. When the "ESC OFF" switch is pressed again, it shall go out, and the ESC system functions normally.

REMINDER

- While the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and keep driving at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly, Because the ESC system does not function during braking in such a situation, the vehicle will become unstable.

Driving power limit warning light

If this indicator illuminates when the vehicle power is limited, contact a BYD authorized service provider in time.

ACC fault indicator

When the indicator is always on, it is recommended to contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile in time.

Seat belt reminder indicator

This warning light reminds the driver and the front passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if either the driver or the front passenger doesn't

fasten a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.

 Airbag fault warning light

- When the power supply of the whole vehicle is in the "ON" or "OK" gear, the airbag warning lamp lights up for about 5S and then goes out, indicating that the system is normal.
- The warning light system is used to monitor the airbag ECU, crash sensor, inflator, warning light, wiring, power supply and jacking device.
- If any of the following conditions occurs, it indicates a fault in a component monitored by the warning light system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible:
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
  - This warning light lights up or flashes while driving.

 Parking system fault warning light

In any of the following cases, park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

This warning light illuminates under the following conditions:

- This warning light illuminates when the brake fluid level is low with the power ON.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, do not drive the vehicle

REMINDER

continuously because it is very dangerous.

- When the engine is running, this warning light stays on if the brake fluid level is normal and the EPB system works normally (the EPB switch is pulled up and released normally, and there is no prompt of "Please check the EPB system").
- The parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time. In this case, the brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. ABS (Anti-lock Braking System) will not work when braking, and the vehicle will be unstable when braking. Please drive carefully.
- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.

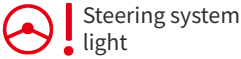
REMINDER

In any of the following cases, park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the engine is running, this indicator will not go out even if the electric parking switch is released. In this case, the brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. Firmly press the brake pedal to initiate an emergency stop.
- The parking system malfunction warning lamp remains on while the ABS malfunction warning lamp is on. Because if the brake operation is performed at this time, not only the ABS does

REMINDER

not work, but the vehicle also becomes extremely unstable.



Steering system fault warning light

- When the warning light stays on, it indicates that the steering system is faulty. In this case, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- A motor is used in the steering system to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, you may hear the motor humming when it is working. This does not indicate a failure.
- The duration of turning the steering wheel to the limit position does not exceed 5s. Otherwise, the temperature protection is activated, resulting in heavy steering or damage.

- When the steering wheel is turned frequently in situ for a long time, the steering system fault warning light does not go on, but it feels hard to turn. This phenomenon is a non-failure mode.
  - If the steering wheel is turned frequently in place for a long time, the steering system boosting effect will decrease to prevent over temperature of the system, resulting in heavy steering when operating the steering wheel. In this case, avoid frequently turning the steering wheel or stopping the vehicle and turning off the engine; the system will return to normal in 10 min.

WARNING

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Engine coolant overheating indicator

When the power gear is "ON", this light is on, indicating that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to stop the vehicle for cooling. Under harsh conditions, such as hot summer season or long time climbing and high-speed driving, the engine may be overheated.

Low oil pressure warning light

- The light means low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, park the vehicle in a safe place, shut down the engine immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light will also come on when the oil level is very low.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.

CAUTION

- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal, which does not indicate a problem.


Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system/ DC system/low-voltage power supply. The engine ignition can only maintain till the battery is fully discharged. Air conditioning, fans, multimedia and so on should be turned off, and it is suggested to contact BYD Automobile Authorized Service Store for rescue as soon as possible.


Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain is faulty, this warning light goes on.
- If any of the following conditions occurs, it indicates a fault in a component monitored by the warning light system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible:
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.


High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this indicator is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery is too hot. Should this occur, stop the vehicle immediately to let it cool down. If the indicator flashes, stop the vehicle immediately and leave it as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may be overheated under the following operating conditions. For example:
  - Long-distance climbing in hot weather.
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.


High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition has just been switched on. If the power battery system works properly, it goes out after a few seconds. If the system is faulty, it goes on again. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized

dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

- With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on.
- This indicator stays on or lights up from time to time during driving.

REMINDER

- The long-time EV mode driving may trigger engine starting request for maintenance. The instrument cluster shows: Engine maintenance starts.

REMINDER

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The following fault messages may appear on the instrument. Please operate according to the recommended handling method:

Displays the icon	Error Message	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The vehicle charging system is faulty. Please check whether the charging connection is abnormal and reconnect the charging equipment. If it can not be solved, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	For your safety, remote control driving is suspended.	Remote control driving is abnormal, please stop using it.
	Please check the vehicle network	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine accessories function limited	The engine accessories function is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the headlight system	The HDC system is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the PCW system*	The PCW system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	The AEB function is limited*	The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

	Please check the BSD system*	The blind spot detection system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	BSD limited*	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Solenoid valve is cleaning. Please wait for a moment.	Solenoid valve is cleaning and park the vehicle to wait. If the icon exits for a long time, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with an electronic smart key, bluetooth key, NFC key and a mechanical key (in the smart key) that allow the user to unlock/lock vehicle doors, start the vehicle and implement other functions.

Electronic Smart Key

Electronic smart key - Lock/Unlock all doors by pressing the front left/right door microswitch while carrying the electronic smart key. Buttons on the smart key help you lock/unlock doors, open the trunk lid, perform a remote start, and locate your vehicle.

- When the electronic smart key is still for more than two minutes, the smart key will actively enter the dormant state. At this time, the functions of unlocking the micro switch and starting the vehicle will fail, so as to prevent others from entering and starting the vehicle by using the relay attack. Move the smart key again or press the key button to release the dormant state, and the electronic key function will return to normal.

Model: D0-92

Operating power supply: button cell battery

Battery Model: CR2032

Nominal voltage: 3V

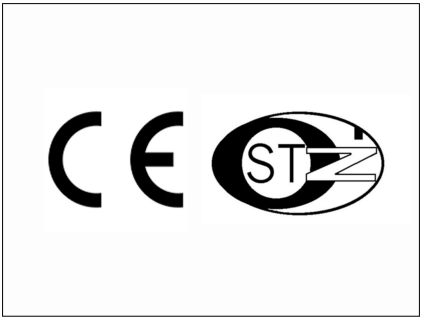
Operating voltage: 2.9V~3.3V

Normal operating current: 8mA (nominal current)

Low-frequency resonance frequency: 125KHZ

Key operating frequency: 434MHz

FCC ID: 2A5DH-DAEA-92



① Indicator

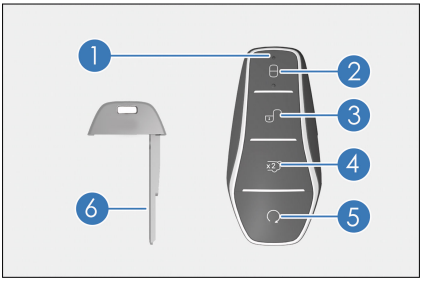
② Lock button

③ “Unlock” button

④ Open trunk lid button

⑤ “START/STOP” button

⑥ “Mechanical Key”



WARNING

- The button (coin) battery in the vehicle key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kpet away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less.

WARNING

- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The electronic smart key is an electronic component. The following instructions should be observed to prevent damage to the electronic smart key.
  - Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not tamper with the smart key.
  - Do not hit other objects with the smart key or drop it.
  - Do not inmmerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach any objects (such as a metal seal) which cut off electromagnetic wave signals when using the card.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.
- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters

CAUTION

that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.

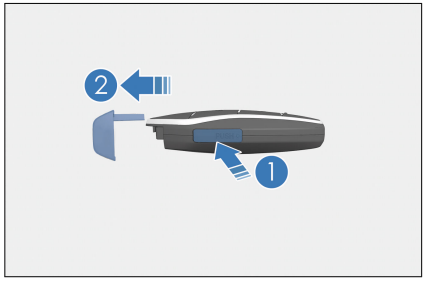
- The battery of an electronic smart key may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

Mechanical Key

Mechanical key (in the smart key) - Unlock/Lock the driver's door. When not in use, make sure to put the mechanical key back and cover the back cover of the electronic smart key.

Taking out the Mechanical Key

To take the mechanical key out of the electronic smart key, press the PUSH button ① on the smart key and then take out the mechanical key along the arrow direction ②, as the figure indicates.



Mechanical Key

- To put the mechanical key back, press the PUSH button and then insert the mechanical key.

Bluetooth Key

- Bluetooth key--Through the proximity bluetooth connection to the vehicle to realize the control of the vehicle, including the control of the door unlocking, locking and so on.

NFC Digital Key*

NFC is a digital key function provided by BYD. Users can register phone or wearable device as the vehicle key to unlock, lock and start the vehicle.

- The following conditions are required to use the NFC digital key. Please ensure that all conditions are met before using it:
  - The vehicle has enabled the BYD Cloud service;
  - The vehicle configuration supports NFC digital key function;
  - Mobile phone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key function (please consult BYD authorized dealer or provider for specific supported device models).

Enabling Phone NFC Digital Key

Before activating it, please enter the vehicle with the smart key, start the vehicle and keep it in “P” gear. Three enabling ways:

- Open via BYD App:
  - Please go to the mobile APP store to download BYD APP, and complete registration and login. Click "Digital key" and follow the prompts.

Enabling the NFC Digital key with Wearable Device

Wearable device Apple Watch supports BYD NFC digital key function (please consult BYD authorized dealer or provider for other supported device models). Two ways to enable the function:

- Sync the iPhone to the Apple Watch after Successful Activation:
  - Activate the iPhone digital key after wearing the unlocked watch. After the iPhone is successfully activated, the prompts can be synchronized to nearby Apple Watch to add the digital key, and complete the activation steps.
- Open via Watch App:
  - It applies to the case that the iPhone digital key is not synchronized to the Apple Watch when it is activated.
  - Please open the Watch APP, select "Wallet", find the corresponding key, and click "Add" to complete activation steps.

The Usage of NFC Digital Key

Activate the NFC function of wearable device or iPhone when use the NFC Digital Key. How to use:

- Carrying a mobile phone/wearable device with an NFC digital key enabled, unlock/lock the vehicle by placing its NFC antenna area close to the NFC sign on the side mirror of the driver’ s side (for NFC antenna area, please consult your device provider).
- After entering the vehicle, place the mobile phone or wearable device at the NFC sign in the vehicle to obtain vehicle start permission.

CAUTION

- Start the vehicle as soon as possible after you have obtained the start permission using the NFC digital key. If the car is not started in time, put the mobile phone or wearable device in the NFC sign again to obtain the start permission.

Delete the NFC Digital Key

There are two ways to remove the NFC digital key:

- Remove in BYD App:
  - Open BYD APP, enter the digital key management page, click the digital key to be deleted, and enter the operation password to complete the deletion;
- Remove in Wallet App:
  - Open the wallet App, find the digital key card that needs to be deleted, and complete the deletion according to the system prompts.

CAUTION

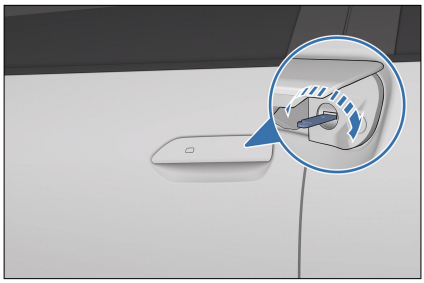
- Some smartphones do not support NFC key function.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

Insert the key into the keyhole and turn it.

- Turn the key clockwise to unlock the driver's door.
- Turn the key counterclockwise to lock the driver's door.



CAUTION

- After pulling out the mechanical key, pull the left front door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.

CAUTION

- As this vehicle is equipped with a child protection lock, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior handle when the child protection lock is disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control function is used to unlock or lock all doors at a short range and realize additional functions.
- When carrying the registered smart key into the activation area, press the button on the key to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- With the vehicle powered off:

- When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors simultaneously. At this time, the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror has the automatic folding function and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on), the turn signal light flashes once.
- If any door, the front compartment lid or the back door is not closed, the closed door can still be locked by using the microswitch, but the turn signal light does not flash, and the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror automatically folds and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on). At the same time, the horn sounds once.

- With the vehicle powered ON:
  - When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors simultaneously. At this time, the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror has the automatic folding function and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on), the turn signal light does not flash, and the horn sounds once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button to unlock all doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Doors can be unlocked/locked with the unlock/lock button under any power state.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights maybe stay on (the lights will come on if turn the interior lights switch to "Door") and then go out after 15 s.
- After unlocking all doors with the electronic smart key, please open any door within 30 s. Otherwise, all doors are locked automatically again.
- If the lock or unlock button is pressed and held, the locking or unlocking function is not repeated. Release the button and press it to realize the function again.

REMINDER

- Remember to bring the key when leaving the vehicle.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- When the vehicle is in the anti-theft state, if the lock button is pressed, the vehicle makes a long sound, and the turn signals flash 15 times. When the vehicle cannot be found, this function can be used to locate it.
- When the vehicle is in the vehicle locating state, press the lock button again to activate the vehicle locating function again.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- With the vehicle powered off:
  - Press and hold the lock button of the smart key to roll up four windows.

- Press and hold the unlock button of the smart key to roll down four windows.

WARNING

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

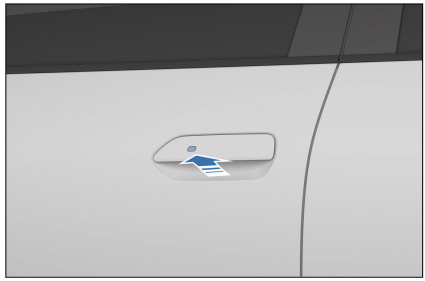
REMINDER

- The user can open or close the function of unlocking/locking and opening/closing the window by pressing the remote control key for a long time through the multimedia → vehicle settings → door, window and lock settings interface (subject to the actual vehicle configuration).

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- With the vehicle powered off:
  - When doors are closed but unlocked, carry the smart key and press the microswitch on the front door handle to lock all doors simultaneously. At this time, the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror has the automatic folding function and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on), the turn signal light flashes once.
  - If any door, the front compartment lid or the back door is not closed, the closed door can still be locked by using the microswitch, but the turn signal light does not flash, and the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror automatically folds and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on). At the same time, the horn sounds once.
- With the vehicle powered ON:
  - When all the doors and the hood are closed, carry a valid smart key and press the microswitch on the front door handle to lock all the doors at the same time. At this time, the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror has the automatic folding function and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on), the turn signal light does not flash, and the horn sounds once.



Unlocking

- When the whole vehicle is locked, slowly and firmly press the "microswitch" button on the outside door handle with a valid intelligent key, all doors are unlocked, the outside rearview mirror is unfolded (when the automatic folding function of the outside rearview mirror is available and the "automatic" switch of the outside rear-view mirror is turned on), and the turn signal light flashes twice.
- In the anti-theft state, the doors can be opened within 30s after using the unlocking function, otherwise all doors will be automatically locked again.

- Pressing the microswitch does not unlock/lock doors in the following cases:
  - Press the microswitch while opening or closing the door.
  - The key is in the vehicle.

WARNING

- If the smart key is too close to the exterior door handle or window, the microswitch unlock function may not be activated.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

With the vehicle powered off, carry a valid smart key, press and hold the microswitch to automatically raise or lower four windows (window raising is enabled by default, while lowering is disabled by default).

The user can turn on or off the above functions via (multimedia touchscreen) → Settings → Locks. By default, the rolling up function is turned on, and the rolling down function is turned off.

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key

Locking

- **With the vehicle powered off:**
- Make the phone NFC close to the area on the driver side mirror to simultaneously lock all the doors when all doors are closed but not locked. At this time, the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror has the automatic folding function and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on), the turn signal light flashes once.
- If any door, the front compartment lid or the back door is not closed, the closed door can still be locked by using the microswitch, but the turn signal light does not flash, and the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror automatically folds and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on). At the same time, the horn sounds once.
- **With the vehicle powered ON:**
- Make the phone NFC close to the area on the driver side mirror to lock all door locks when all doors and hood are closed. At this time, the exterior rearview mirror does not fold (when the exterior rearview mirror has the automatic folding function and the "Auto" switch of the exterior rear-view mirror is turned on), the turn signal light does not flash, and the horn sounds once.

Unlocking

- When the anti-theft system is activated, carry the phone NFC close to sensing area with the NFC mark on the front left external mirror. All doors unlock simultaneously. The turn signals flash twice.
- When the anti-theft system is activated, please open the door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the phone NFC key. Otherwise, all doors are locked automatically again.
- After the phone NFC is used to unlock, the user's start permission is provided within a certain period of time, and the permission is unlocked at the "OFF" position.
- Place the phone NFC close to sensing area with the NFC mark on the front left external mirror does not work if:
  - When opening or closing the door, the phone NFC is close to the

command area on the front left exterior rearview mirror.

CAUTION

- The keyless start permission lasts for up to 4 minutes.
- Some smartphones do not support NFC when the phone is turned off.
- Please avoid long-term or frequent use when the smartphone is dead.

REMINDER

- When the anti-theft system is activated, please open the door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the phone NFC. Otherwise, all doors are locked automatically again.
- After the phone NFC is used to unlock, the user's start permission is provided within a certain period of time, and the permission is unlocked at the "OFF" position.

Locking/Unlocking the Trunk Lid

Opening/Closing trunk with smart key

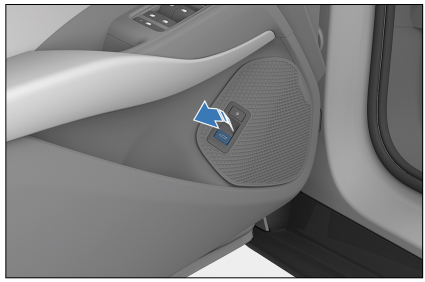
- Double press the tailgate open button on the smart key to open the tailgate. Turn signals flash twice. Press this button again to stop opening. Then double press it to close the lid.

REMINDER

- If the trunk release button is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position.

Opening/Closing tailgate from inside the Vehicle*

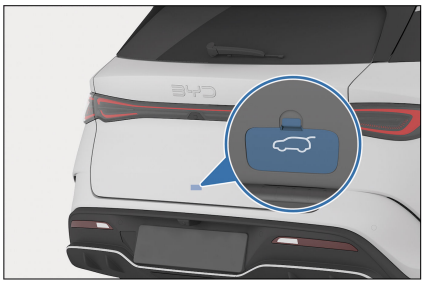
- When the tailgate is closed, pull the switch once, and the back door will be unlocked and opened to the set position (default maximum height).
- When the tailgate is opened, pull the switch again, and the back door will stop at the current position immediately and stably.



- With the vehicle powered on and the trunk open, pull this switch for more than one second to automatically close the trunk. Release the switch to freeze the closing motion.

Opening the Trunk lid with external button

- When the vehicle is unlocked, press the switch outside the tailgate to open the tailgate.
- When the whole vehicle is locked, carry the valid smart key of the vehicle, press the outside switch of the tailgate, and the lid can be opened.



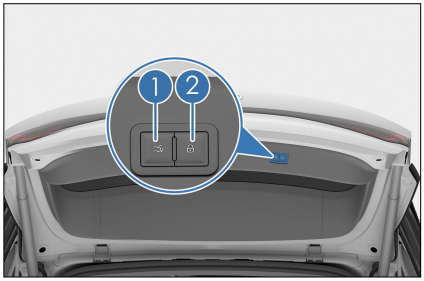
REMINDER

- If the switch is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position.

Electrically close the tailgate*

① Trunk lid close button*

- When the boot lid is open and stationary, press the trunk close button to close this lid.
- Press the trunk close button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. If the button is then pressed again, this lid will move in the opposite direction.



② Vehicle lock button*

- When the vehicle is powered off and the boot lid is opened, carry an effective smart key and press the locking button to close the boot lid, lock the vehicle and enter the anti-theft state.

Manually close the tailgate*

- When the vehicle is unlocked, the tailgate can be closed manually.

Opening/Closing Trunk with BYD Assistant*

- After users wake up the intelligent voice system, users can control the opening and closing of the tailgate through the "intelligent voice assistant".

CAUTION

- Before closing the trunk electronically, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

Setting Tailgate Opening Height*

- Manually or automatically open the boot lid at the desired position and keep it there; press and hold the interior boot lid button for more than 3s. After the speaker sounds for 1s, the current tailgate height is set successfully.
- Adjust the trunk open height via (infotainment system) → Vehicle Settings → Locks.

Anti-pinch Function

- If the electric tailgate is subjected to a force that hinders its movement in the process of closing, the back door will automatically open in the opposite direction; if it is subjected to a force that hinders its movement in the process of opening, it will stop immediately.

When the Trunk Fails to Act Automatically

- Manually and completely close the trunk for recovery.

When reconnecting the low-voltage battery

- Manually close the trunk to ensure the power tailgate functions normally.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the trunk.
  - Make sure the trunk is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
  - Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before opening the boot, otherwise the lid may close again.
  - Do not manually interfere in lid motion when it is opening or closing.
  - Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the trunk.
  - The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the trunk is fully closed.

WARNING

- The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the trunk on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.
- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape. Be especially careful about hand and fingers.

Locking/Unlocking the Trunk

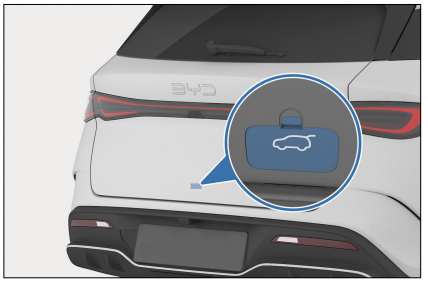
Unlocking of the Trunk Lid with the Microswitch

Double press the unlocking button of the smart key to open the trunk lid. Turn signals flash twice.

- Anti-forget key function
  - If the key is placed in the locked vehicle and the boot lid is closed, the vehicle will get unlocked automatically and the turn signals flash twice.

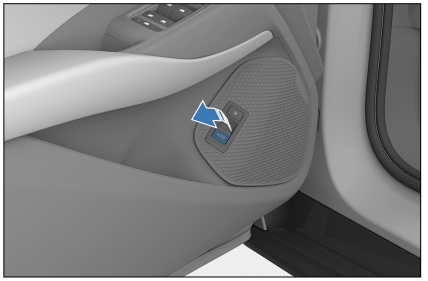
Unlock the trunk lid using the microswitch

- The whole vehicle is locked. Carry a valid key and press the "rear microswitch" to unlock the trunk.
- When the vehicle is unlocked, press the "Rear Microswitch" to open the trunk lid.



Open the Trunk Lid inside the Vehicle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, use the electric trunk lid button to open it.
- If the vehicle speed is greater than 5km/h, the trunk lid cannot be opened by pressing the button.



REMINDER

- Before closing the trunk lid, it is necessary to confirm whether the doors, windows, skylights, etc. Have been closed to avoid property damage.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

- Refer to the central control door lock switch of the left front door switch group.

Locking or Unlocking Doors Automatically

- All doors are automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 8 km/h.
- When the START/STOP button is pressed and the power is switched from "ON" to "OFF", all doors are unlocked automatically.

Locking and unlocking all doors simultaneously

- When the vehicle is not in the anti-theft mode, the backlight of the central door lock button turns on after the vehicle is locked, and turns offt if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Press the lock button of the central door lock to lock all doors simultaneously. At this time, the door cannot be opened from the outside.To open the door, pull the inner handle once to unlock the door, and then pull it again to open the door.

REMINDER

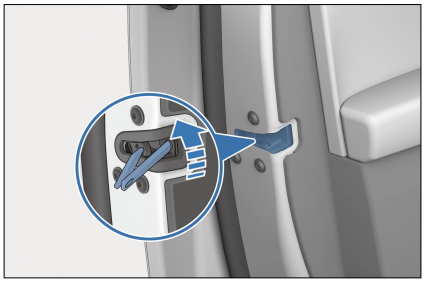
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

- When the central locking fails, lock the driver's door with the mechanical key. Use the key to turn the emergency

locking knobs of the other three doors counterclockwise to the locked state, and then close the doors. At this time, the entire vehicle has been locked so that doors cannot be opened with any of the four exterior door handles.

- To unlock the doors, unlock the driver's door with the mechanical key first, then enter the vehicle and pull other interior door handles twice to open the doors.



REMINDER

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors.

Access

Carry a valid smart key to unlock or lock the doors (see "Use the smart key to unlock/lock/locate the vehicle").

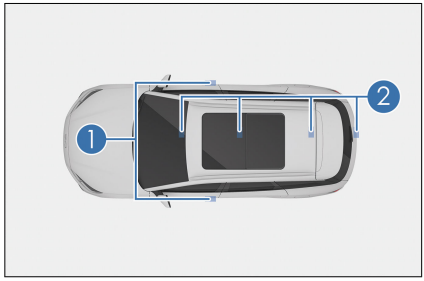
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle. (Refer to ***P122***)

Antenna Position

① Exterior detection antenna

②Detection antenna in the compartment



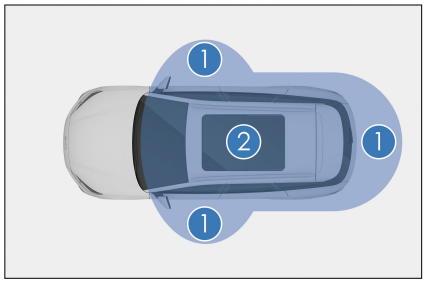
Activation Area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

①Enter the function activation area-within about 1m from the front door handle and the exterior switch of the tailgate.

② The start function activation area is located in the compartment.

If the intelligent key of the vehicle is near the intelligent keys of other vehicles, it may take a bit longer than usual to unlock the doors, which is normal.



REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Possible causes for the failure of the normal start function when the "START/STOP" button is pressed:
  - If the smart key does not work, the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, and the information display screen on the instrument cluster displays a prompt about the low SOC of the key battery, the battery SOC of the key may have run out.
  - Start the engine repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10s before starting the vehicle.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving Battery SOC

- Communication between the key and the vehicle occurs even when the vehicle is parked. Therefore, do not leave the key in the vehicle or within 2 m from the vehicle.
- If the smart key receives strong electromagnetic waves for a long time, the battery runs out rapidly. The smart key must be kept at least 1 m away from the following equipment:
  - TV set
  - Personal computer
  - Mobile phone charger
  - Light stand
  - Fluorescent light

Child Protection Lock

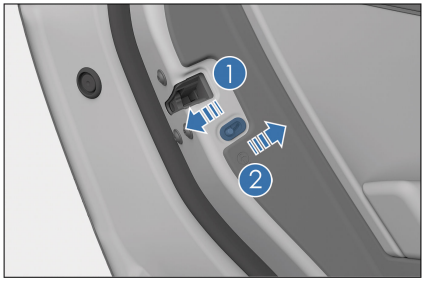
- To prevent children sitting on the rear seat from accidentally opening the rear doors, the vehicle is equipped with a child protection lock. There is a child protection lock latch on each side of the left and right rear doors.

Activating the child protection lock

- Pull the latch in the direction of arrow (1) to turn on the child protection lock, so that the door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. To open this door, use the exterior handle.

Deactivating the child protection lock

- Pull the latch in the direction of arrow (2) to turn on the child protection lock, so that the door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.



CAUTION

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, be sure to turn on the child protection lock and lock the door.
- Proper use of the seat belt and turning on the child protection lock can help prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in case of an accident, and can also prevent the door from being opened accidentally.

Seat

Seat Precautions

Seat Precautions

Adjusting Front Seats

Electrical Front Seat Adjustment*

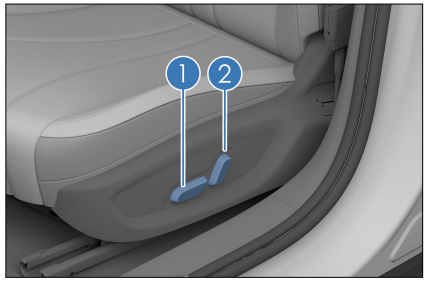
Electrical front seat adjustment includes the adjustment of front and rear distance, seat cushion height, and backrest angle. There are the following adjustment methods according to the functions equipped with the actual vehicle.

① Seat Position Adjustment Switch

- Move this switch forward or backward to slide the seat forward or backward.
- Pull up or push down the back end of this switch to adjust seat cushion height.

② Seatback Angle Adjustment Switch

- Move the seatback angle adjustment switch back or forth to adjust the seatback angle.



REMINDER

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as

REMINDER

this may prevent the seat from operating.

Memory System*

Memory switch position

The memory system switch is on the multimedia, and there are two memory gears, namely “1” and “2”.

Setting Function

- Memory setting conditions
  - The vehicle is powered on with no vehicle speed.
  - The driver's seat, side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat, side mirrors.

Memory setting method

- Memory function setting in "OK" gear
  - Press any one of the memory switches "1" or "2" for a long time in the seat memory setting interface on the multimedia screen, and then the positions of the seat and the exterior rearview mirror will be remembered, and the memory setting is completed.
  - Short press any one of the memory switches "1" or "2" in the seat memory setting item interface on the multimedia screen, and the memory systems such as seat and exterior rearview mirror will perform memory wake-up operation.

REMINDER

- If the position button on the memory switch has already been

REMINDER

set, the position set will be overwritten.

Memory wake-up function

Memory function setting in "OK" gear

- When the gear is in "P", if the following conditions are met, press one of the two memory system switches for a short time, and the memory systems such as the driver's seat, left and right exterior rearview mirrors will execute the memory wake-up operation:
  - The vehicle is not in anti-theft mode.
  - No speed.
  - Memory switch signals are valid.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat, side mirrors.

Heating and Ventilation System*

- The heating and ventilation system is controlled to be turned on and off through the multimedia → air conditioning → ventilation and heating operation keys.
- In the "drop-down bar" of the multimedia home page, the seat heating and ventilation settings button can be accessed.

Heating system adjustment

- Seat heating: To control the working mode of the heating pad, the user can operate the heating switch on the infotainment touchscreen. The heating function includes gear 1, gear 2, and gear 3.
  - The ventilation and heating indicator is off by default after each power-on.

- Press the switch, and the seat heater will work between the first gear, the second gear and the third gear.
- Press the OFF position to turn off the heating function.

Ventilation system regulation

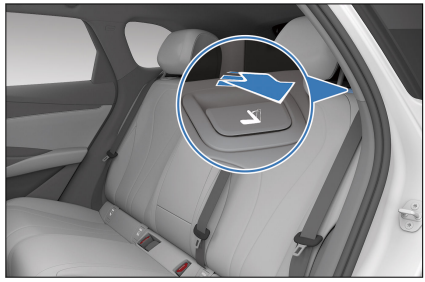
- Seat ventilation: The user can control the working gear of the ventilation fan by operating the seat ventilation switch. The seat ventilation is divided into gear 1, gear 2 and gear 3.
  - The heating indicator is off by default after each power-on.
  - Press the switch, and the seat ventilation will work between the first gear, the second gear and the third gear.
  - Press the OFF position to turn off the ventilation function.

Ventilation and heating functions cannot be turned on simultaneously

- Press the ventilation switch to start the ventilation fan. If the heating switch is pressed, the ventilation fan stops working, and the heater starts working.
- Press the heating switch to start the heater. If the ventilation switch is pressed, the heater stops working, and the ventilation fan starts working.

Folding Rear Seats

Pull up the fold-and-unlock handle on the seat backrest to fold the rear seat backrest.



CAUTION

- Please fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seatbacks to prevent damages to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- When the rear seats are folded or recovered, please ensure that the left and right safety belts are exposed, so as to prevent the safety belts from being clighted between the rear seats and the side wings and damaging the seats and safety belts.

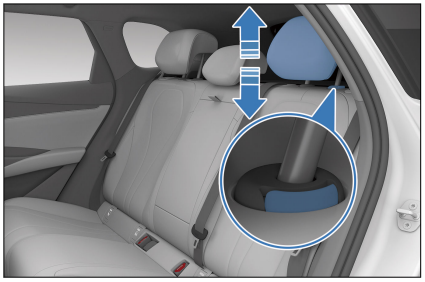
Adjusting Head Supports

Lifting headrests

Pull up the headrest to the desired position in the direction of the headrest rod, and release it after hearing a "click".

Lowering headrests

Press the headrest height adjustment button, lower the headrest to the desired position, release the button, then pull up the headrest slightly and release it after hearing a "click".



Removing headrests

Press the headrest height adjustment button to pull out the headrest, and then release this button.

Installing headrests

Insert the headrest links into the bushing with the groove facing forward. Press the headrest height adjustment button, lower the headrest to the desired position, release the button, then pull up the headrest slightly and release it after hearing a "click".

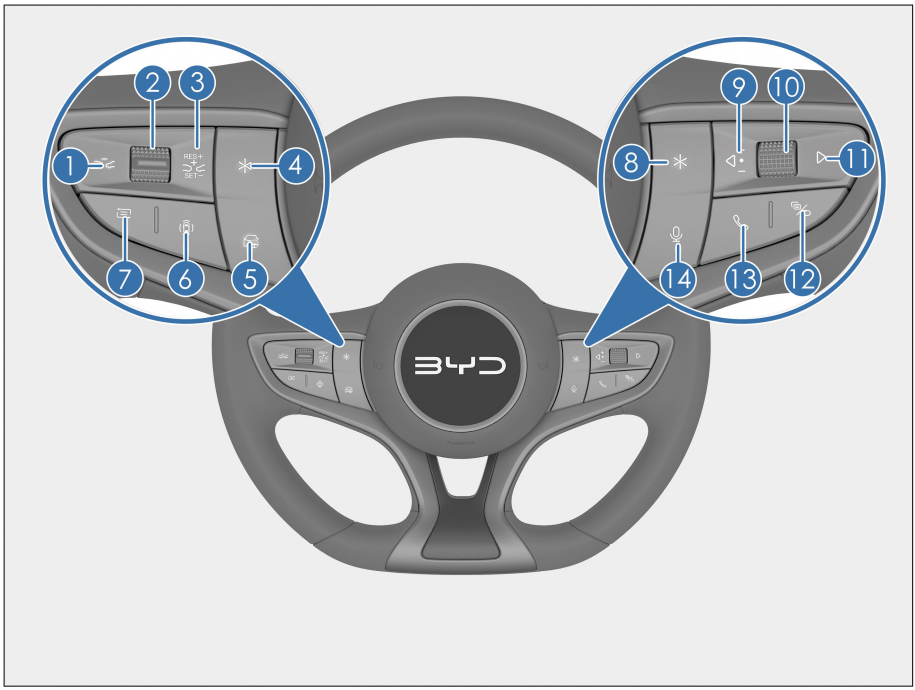
REMINDER

- To avoid injuries on the neck and head, adjust the height center of the headrest to be on a level with the upper part of the ear.
- After adjusting the headrest, press the headrest downward to confirm that it is locked.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any object to the headrest lever.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switch Group



1	Distance-	8	Customize Keys
2	Lever	9	Press the right key
3	Distance +	10	Scroll button
4	Customize Keys	11	Press the left key
5	Intelligent driving button*	12	Instrument cluster menu/return button
6	Panoramic view	13	Phone Button
7	Driving information	14	Voice recognition

Left buttons*

Distance-

- Reduces the distance from the vehicle ahead by one notch when the ACC

function is enabled. A total of four notches are available.

Lever

- Resetting /+: Activates the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system and uses the previous system settings.
- Setting /-: Set the current speed to the target cruise speed.

Distance +

- In the cruise following function, adjust the time interval with the vehicle in front, and add one level, totaling four levels.

Customize Keys

- If the custom button is not customized, press this button to activate the default function: rotating the multimedia touchscreen. Press and hold this button to display the customization interface. Customization functions include rotating multimedia display screen, driving recorder photographing* and locking function*. When the customization button has been customized to a certain function, short press to activate the function, long press to enter the customization interface, and re-customize or cancel the customization.

Intelligent driving button*

- Turns the ACC system on or off.

Panoramic view

- Press this button to turn off the panoramic view in panoramic mode and turn on the panoramic view in non-panoramic mode.

Driving information

- Short press to switch the driving information interface cyclically, and long press to clear the relevant driving information.

Right buttons

Scroll Button

- To adjust the multimedia volume in non-instrument cluster menu mode:
  - Roll down the roller: Increase the volume in a single step until the maximum volume.
  - Roll down: Decrease the volume in a single step until the minimum volume.
  - Roll down: mute function.
- In instrument cluster menu mode:
  - Roll down the roller: Select the secondary/tertiary menu items upward.
  - Roll down: Select the secondary/ tertiary menu items downward.
  - Roll down: enter the menu next to the current option or confirm the current setting.

CAUTION

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right buttons

- In radio mode:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous radio station.
  - Press ▷ to play the previous radio station.
- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music APP and other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).

- Press ◁ to select the previous entry in the Bluetooth Call History and Contacts interfaces.
- Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).
- Press ▷ to select the next entry in the Bluetooth Call History and Contacts interfaces.

- In instrument cluster menu mode:
  - Press ◁ to switch it to a left menu and its submenus.
  - Press ▷ to switch it to a right menu and its submenus.

Mode

- Selecting a mode: press the mode button to switch between media applications, peripheral applications and pre-installed third-party audio and video applications.
  - If the audio is turned off, press the "Mode" button for a short time to turn it on and enter the memory playback mode when it was turned off last time. If there is no playback source in the memory playback mode (such as no external audio device), it will be directly switched to the radio station mode.

Phone Button

- Press to make/receive a call. (The multimedia system is muted after pressing this button.)
- When the system is in a Bluetooth unrelated interface and Bluetooth is not paired, press this button for the system to skip to the Bluetooth Connected interface. If Bluetooth is connected, press this button for the system to skip to the main dialing interface.
- When a number is input in the dialing interface, or an entry from the Call History or Contacts is selected, press this button to start dialing.
- While under the main dialing interface with Bluetooth connected and no number input, press this button for the system to directly skip to the Outgoing Calls interface under the Call History interface. Press it again for the system to automatically call the first entry in the Outgoing Calls interface.

Voice recognition

- Press this button to switch the infotainment touchscreen to the voice recognition interface and realize the voice function.
- Press this key again to exit the voice recognition.

Instrument cluster menu/return button

- When the instrument cluster is not in menu mode, press this buttonto display the menu on the instrument cluster.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- On the Bluetooth call screen, press it to end the call.

Horn

- Press the pad to sound the horn.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

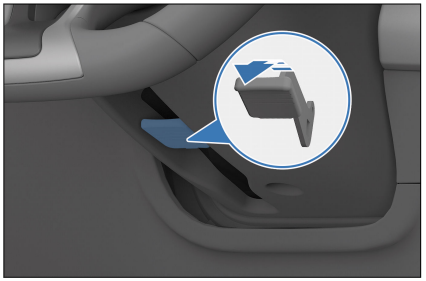
REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually*

- When adjusting the angle or axial position of the steering wheel, hold the steering wheel and perform the following operations:
  - Press the steering wheel adjustment handle downward to tilt the steering wheel to the desired position, and then restore the handle to the locking position.



REMINDER

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Mode

- The hand feeling of steering assist differs among people, and different users have different evaluations and demands on the feeling.
- To set the steering mode, go to the Settings → Vehicle Settings → Smart Chassis → Steering mode, and select Comfort Mode or Sport Mode.

REMINDER

- Setting the power steering to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed. The power steering mode can only be set when the normal terrain mode, ELKA function is turned off, the vehicle is driving in a straight line and the vehicle speed is lower than 80km/h.

Steering Wheel Heating Function*

Steering wheel heating is activated by the following ways:

- Enter the multimedia → ventilation heating interface to turn on or off the steering wheel heating.
- Enter the pull-down convenient menu and click the ventilation and heating icon to enter the setting interface.
- Voice control: Activate voice control to turn the heated steering wheel on or off.

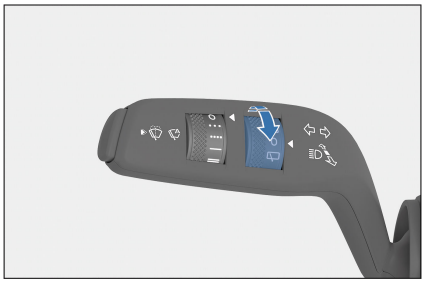
Wipers

Wiper Switch

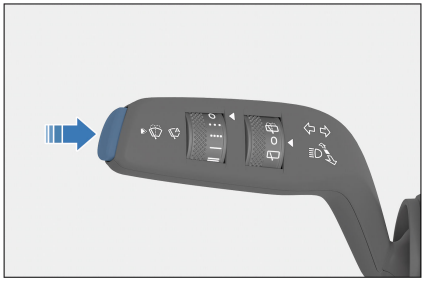
Front Windshield Wipers and Washer

Auto Wipers/Intermittent

- The control lever is used to control the windshield wipers and washers and has five positions:
  - : Automatic/intermittent wiper gear 1
  - : Automatic/intermittent wiper gear 2
  - : LO level
  - : High-speed wiper mode
  - 0 : Front wiper off
- If you need to select the gear, you can roll up or roll down.
- At low- and high- speed modes, the wiper operates continuously.



- To operate the wiper in the spot mode, press the button at the end of the operating lever to the first gear position, and the wiper will hang water at a low speed until the button is released.



- When the automatic wiper switch is turned on in the Touchscreen → Settings → Vehicle → Comfort Driving, the wiper wipes once, then enters the automatic wiper gear, and the wiper works automatically according to the rainfall.
- In the automatic wiper gear, turn the wiper switch knob to adjust the automatic wiper gear.

WARNING

- When the power gear is in the "ON/OK" gear, turn the wiper to the automatic gear. At this time, if you touch the glass on the upper part of the sensor with your hand or wipe it with a cloth, it may cause the wiper to operate and cause accidents.
- Turn off the automatic wiper in car washing, dry season or rainless weather, otherwise it may cause the wiper to run unintentionally.

CAUTION

- When the wiper stops running due to snow and other reasons, please turn off the wiper, park the vehicle in a safe place, and then remove the snow and other debris so that the wiper can work normally.
- Because of the different shapes of snowflakes in snowy days, sometimes even if the snowflakes touch the rain sensor, the sensor can not sense normally, resulting in the wiper can not work properly. When the snow melts, it may cause the wiper to wipe automatically.

Rear Windshield Wiper and Washer

- Rotate the knob at the end of the wiper lever to to activate the

rear windshield wiper, and to 0 to deactivate it.

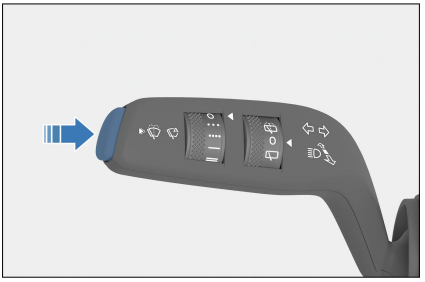
- Rotate this knob to to simultaneously activate the rear windshield wiper and washer.

REMINDER

- Check the wiper blade regularly to remove the dirt on it.
- If the wiper is turned on as soon as it rains, rainwater mixing with sand and dust will not clean the windshield, but cause a blurred vision in an instant, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water or other types of detergent may cause damage to the washer motor.
- If the tailgate is opened or not fully closed, the wiper switch fails to control the rear wiper. After the tailgate is closed, the rear wiper function returns to normal.

Front windshield washer

- When cleaning the front windshield, press the button at the end of the operating lever to the second gear position, the washer sprays water continuously, and then the wiper starts to work.
- When the stick is released, or when it is held for over 10 seconds, the washer spray stops, and the wipers stop after operating for 1–2 cycles.



CAUTION

- Check the wiper blade regularly to remove the dirt on it.
- If the wiper is turned on as soon as it rains, rainwater mixing with sand and dust will not clean the windshield, but cause a blurred vision in an instant, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water or other types of detergent may cause damage to the washer motor.

Replace the Wiper

Inspect wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If any of these are found, the wiper blades should be replaced. Failure to do so may result in windshield damage or incomplete cleaning of the windshield.

CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arm is pulled up; otherwise, the hood and the wiper arm may be damaged.

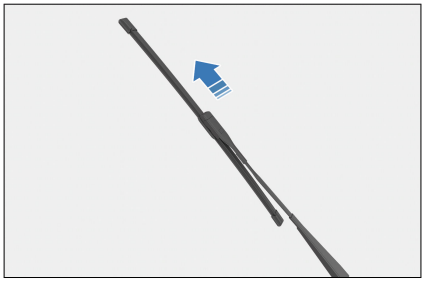
Replacing Wiper Blades

With the vehicle powered ON or OK, the user can go to (infotainment system)

→ Vehicle Health → Maintenance Settings to activate the wiper maintenance function. After the function is activated, the wiper runs to a high position and then stop, so as to facilitate maintenance and replacement of the wiper. After maintenance, the wiper returns to the reset position after the wiper maintenance function is deactivated.

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper blade lock button.

3. Hold the wiper blade clip and take out the wiper blade in the direction shown in the figure.
4. When assembling a new wiper blade, operate in the reverse order of removal.



CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up.

CAUTION

- Lower the wipers slowly, avoiding direct impact onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

Replacing Rear Wipers

1. Lift the rear wiper arm from the rear windshield.
2. Hold the wiper arm by hand and pull out the blade vertically, as shown in the figure.
3. When assembling a new wiper blade, operate in the reverse order of removal.

CAUTION

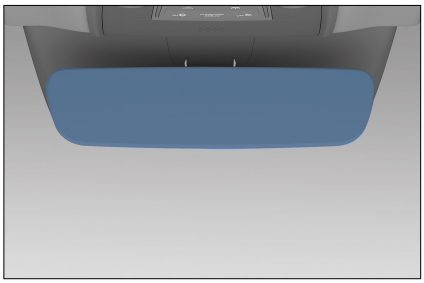
- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up.
- Lower the wipers slowly, avoiding direct impact onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- In rainy and snowy days in winter, it is recommended to enter the multimedia vehicle health setting interface to open the front wiper maintenance, and then lift the front wiper manually to avoid the wiper being frozen.

Side Mirror

Interior Rearview Mirror

The automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically

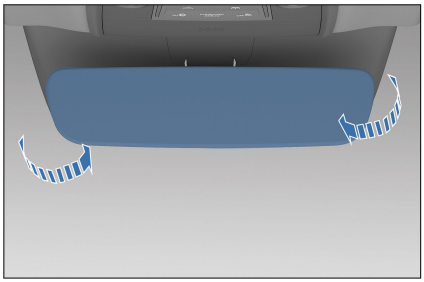
adjusts the lens color of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.



Manual Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror

The manual anti-glare rearview mirror is designed with the normal mode and anti-glare mode:

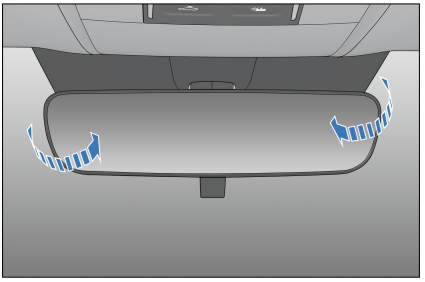
- Normal mode —— rotate the control stick to ① to get the clearest mirror image.



- Anti-glare mode - adjust the control lever in position, where the interference from headlights behind can be effectively reduced at night. Remember that rear view image clarity decreases when glare is reduced.

Adjusting the Rearview Mirror Manually

Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



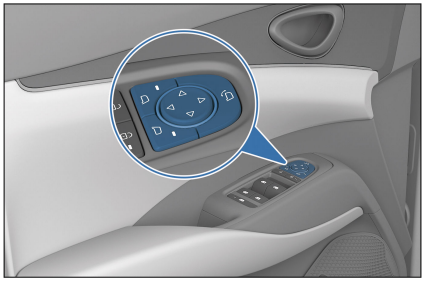
WARNING

- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the interior rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.
- Do not hang heavy objects on the interior rearview mirror, or shake or pull it vigorously.
- When the interior rearview mirror gets stuck, do not adjust it violently by hand, as this may cause it to fall off.

Side Mirrors

Through the side mirror switch, the side mirror can be adjusted to the appropriate angle, so that the driver can just see both sides of the vehicle in the rearview mirror.

- Selection switch: Selection switches: used to select the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Left side mirror button
  - : Right side mirror button
- Adjustment button : After selecting the exterior rearview mirror to be adjusted, press this button again to adjust the lens of the exterior rearview mirror to the appropriate position.



Folding Side Mirrors

Folding side mirrors manually

- Press the outer edge of the side mirror hard to rotate the mirror body around the folding shaft to the locking position.

Electric Folding

- Folding button : Press this button to fold in the left and right side mirrors simultaneously, and press it again to unfold them.
- When the anti-theft function is activated, the two external rearview mirrors fold automatically.When the anti-theft function is released, they unfold automatically.
- Users can turn on or off the automatic folding function of the side mirror through the Multimedia Sysem → Vehicle Settings → Comfort Driving setting interface.

WARNING

- Adjusting side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

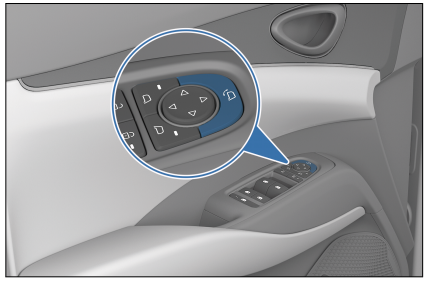
REMINDER

- If side mirrors are frozen, use a jet deicer to clean the mirror surfaces instead of operating the controller or scraping their surfaces.
- The outside rearview mirror has the reverse turning function *: When reversing the vehicle, the lens of the electric exterior rearview mirror will automatically turn down to a comfortable reversing angle.

Folding Side Mirrors

Electric side mirror folding button

- Press the button to fold the side mirror electrically and press it again to unfold it.
- When the anti-theft function is activated, the two side mirrors fold automatically.When the anti-theft function is released, they unfold automatically.



Switches

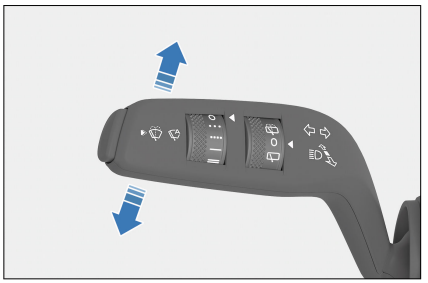
Light Switches

The auto lamp, small lamp, low beam lamp and rear fog lamp switches are

integrated on the instrument cluster. See the Instrument Cluster ***P*** for details.

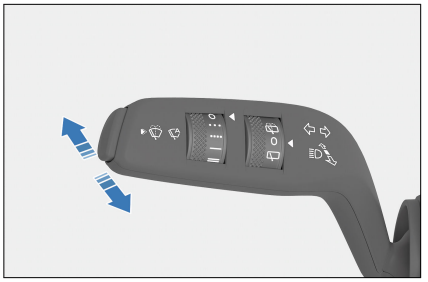
Turn signals

Turn on and turn off the left and right turn lights by moving the light handle up and down, turn on the right turn light by moving it up, and turn on the left turn light by moving it down.



Overtaking Light and High Beam

Turn on and off the overtaking light and the high beam light by toggling the light handle forward and backward, turn on the high beam light by toggling forward, and turn on the overtaking light by tossing backward.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto Off

- Conditions for enabling the auto off function: This function is activated when the power supply is switched from the "Start" state to the "Stop" state.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- If the left front door is open after the automatic lights-out function is activated, the automatic lights-out function will automatically turn off the headlight, small light, rear fog light and high beam that have been turned on after 10 minutes.
- After auto off, if the light mode changes, lights will be turned on according to the new state. If the conditions for enabling the auto off function are met after that, the auto off function will be activated again.
- Disabling the auto off function: After the vehicle is powered on, the auto off function is disabled, and the light knob can be operated normally.
- The automatic lights-out function makes the lamp go out, and after entering the anti-theft state, the anti-theft state is released, and the extinguished lamp will automatically light up again. If the right front door is not open, the auto light out function will turn the light off again after 10 seconds. If the door is opened, the auto off function turns off the lights after 10 min.

Lighting delay function

- Follow me home:
  - The user can go to the "Headlights after Exit" setting interface via Settings → Light → Courtesy Light to set the time of follow me home. The default time is 10 s.

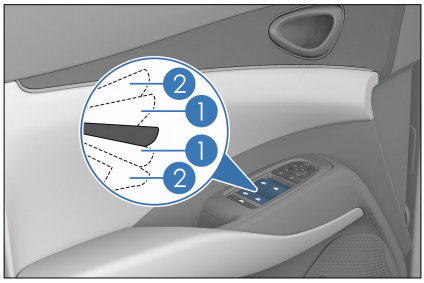
When the user switches off to the "OFF" position and tries to leave the vehicle, the corresponding light will continue to light for 10 s (or the time you set).

- Follow me home:
  - The user can go to the “Headlights before Enter" setting interface via the multimedia touchscreen → Light → Courtesy Light to set the time of follow me home. The default time is 10 seconds. When the user unlocks the vehicle and tries to approach the vehicle, the corresponding lights will be on for 10 seconds (or the time you set).

Driver's Door Switch Group

Electric Window Switch

- With the vehicle powered OK, the window control switch on each side can be used to control the window regulation.
  - Door glass down-Press the window control switch.
  - Door glass up-pull up the window control switch.



Manual Rolling

- Press down the window control switch to position ① and hold it, the window descends, and release the rear window to stop working; pull up the window control switch to position ① and hold it, the window ascends, and release the rear window to stop working.

Automatic Lifting

- Press the window regulator switch to ② mode position and release it to automatically lower the window; pull up the window switch to ② mode position and release it to automatically raise the window. In the process of lifting, operate the window control switch button in any direction to stop lifting the window.

Anti-pinch Function

- When the window is obstructed by a person or an object while rolling up, it stops and rolls down to allow for the obstruction to be removed.

Failure of window dynamic lifting function or anti-pinch function

- If the window automatically rises and the anti-pinch function fails, the following methods can be taken to restore this function.
  - Pull up the window switch to raise the window glass to the top position and hold it there for about two seconds, and then press to lower the window glass to the bottom and hold it there for about two seconds. The automatic up and anti-pinch functions can be recovered.

Delay Function

- After power off, if the front door is not opened, the four-door window control switch has a 10-minute lifting function delay and can continue to operate the window lifting. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

Central Locking

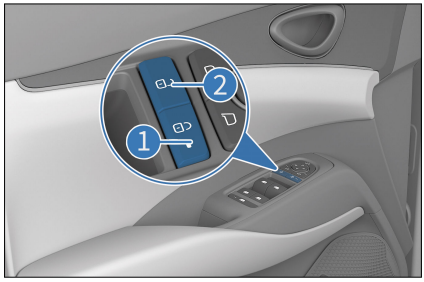
The front left door is equipped with buttons These two switches lock or unlock all doors.

① Unlocking

Press the central unlock button to unlock all doors. Once doors are unlocked, the button indicator goes off.

② Locking

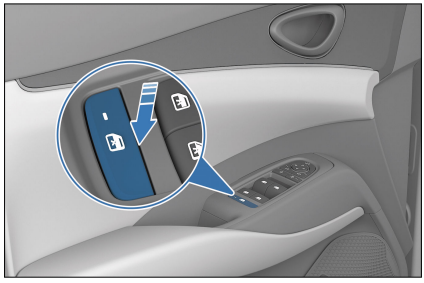
Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.



Window Lock Button

Window Lock Button Power Window Switches

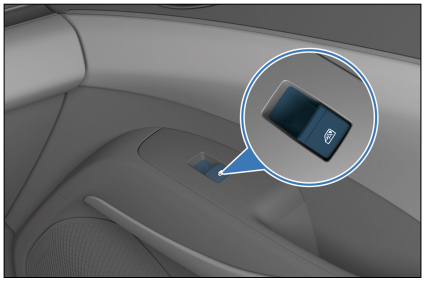
- Press the window lock switch. Only the switches on the driver's side can be used to open/close four windows; the window switches on the rear row are deactivated.
- Press the left window lock button again, the indicator light will go out, and the window control switch function of each passenger will be restored.
- The operation of the right window lock button is the same as that of the left window.



Window Control Switch on Passenger Side

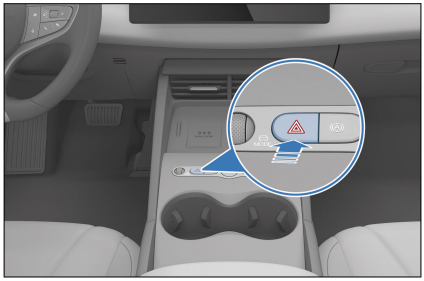
When the power gear of the whole vehicle is in "OK" or "OFF" gear (within the delay time), the window control switch

on the passenger side can control the corresponding window glass to rise and fall respectively.



Hazard Warning Light Switch

Press the switch ⚠, all the turn signal lights start to flash, and the instrument turn indicator lights flash synchronously; press the switch ⚠ again to stop flashing.



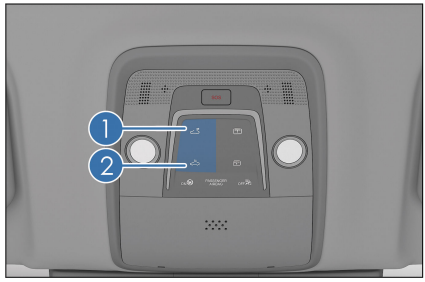
Sunroof Switch*

When operating the sunroof, the power gear of the whole vehicle is in the range of "ON" gear or "OFF" gear power-off delay time.

Panoramic Sunroof*

Opening the Sunroof

- Press and hold the sunroof open button ① to open the sunroof manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunroof at its current position.
- Press the sunroof open button ① and release immediately to tilt the sunroof for ventilation. Press it again to automatically open the sunroof to the two-thirds position. Press it again to fully open the sunroof. Press button ① or button ② midway to stop the sunroof at its current position.

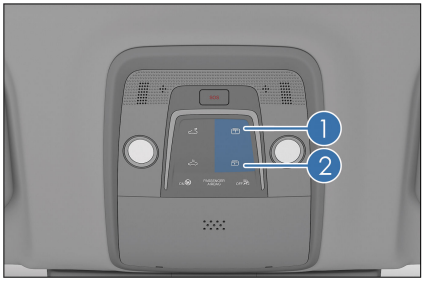


Closing the Sunroof

- Press and hold the sunroof close button②to manually close the sunroof. Release the button to stop the sunroof at its current position.
- If the system is initialized, press the sunroof close button ② and release it immediately to automatically close the sunroof. Press button ① or button ② midway to stop the sunroof at its current position.

Opening the Sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade open button ① to manually open the sunshade. Release the button to stop the sunshade at its current position.
- Press the sunshade open button ① and release it immediately to automatically open the sunshade. Press button ① or button ② midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.



Closing the Sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade close button ② to manually close the sunroof. Release the button to stop the sunshade at its current position.
- If the sunshade is initialized, press the sunshade close button ② and release it immediately to automatically close the sunshade. Press button ① or button ② midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.

REMINDER

- When the sunroof is not fully closed, the sunshade position will never be further than that of the sunroof.

Sunshade Linkage Function

When the sunroof is opened, the sunshade will be opened together with the sunroof.

Anti-pinch Function*

If the sunroof or sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

WARNING

- Keep clear of the sunroof when it is opening or closing, or severe injury may occur.

WARNING

- Passengers must refrain from sticking hands or their heads out through the sunroof. Otherwise, severe injury or even death may occur.
- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window and sunroof switches in a wrong way.

CAUTION

- Trying to open the sunroof in outside temperatures below 0°C or when it is covered in snow or frost may damage the sunroof or its motor.

Initialization

- The initialization shall be performed as follows:

1. Press the OFF button to close the sunroof to the lock point.
2. Close the sunshade to the blocking point.
3. Operate the sunshade to the fully open position.
4. Operate the sunroof to the full open position.
5. Operate the sunshade to the fully closed position.

CAUTION

- During the initialization process, press the sunroof switch close button for a long time and do not release it until the initialization is completed.

CAUTION

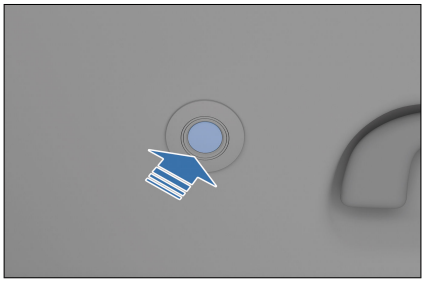
- The sunroof and sunblind will be initialized simultaneously.

Interior Light Switch

Front/Rear Interior lights

Interior Light Switch

Rear Interior Lights Switch



When the vehicle power is not OFF and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, if this switch is pressed with the door open, the interior light switches from high to low light, and does not go out. When the vehicle is powered off and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, the light goes out after a period of time if the door is opened. If there are other operations during the period, it is timed again. (The user can slide down the status bar on the top of the multimedia touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the "DOOR" switch)

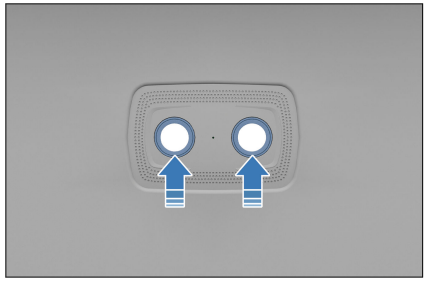
Ambient Light*

- The user can go to the setting interface via (infotainment system) → Vehicle Settings → Lights to control the brightness, colors and area of the ambient light.
  - The brightness of the atmosphere lamp is divided into 0-5 gears, and the 0 gear is when the atmosphere lamp is turned off.

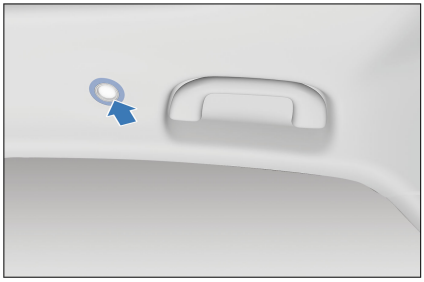
Front/Rear/Side Interior Lights

Interior Light Switch

Rear Interior Lights Switch

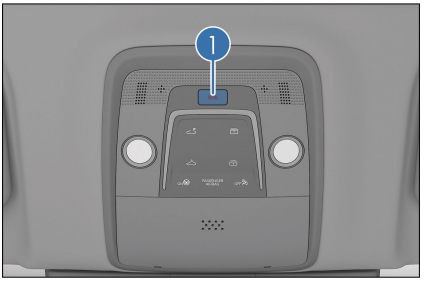


Interior Light Switch



When the vehicle is not in the "OFF" gear and the "DOOR" gear switch is turned on, touch/press the switch in the door opening state, and the indoor light will switch between high and low lights and will not go out; when the vehicle is in the "OFF" gear and the "DOOR" gear switch is turned on, the indoor light will go out after a period of time in the door opening state. If there are other operations during the period, it is timed again. (The user can slide down the status bar on the top of the multimedia touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the "DOOR" switch)

E-Call Switch*



①E-Call

E-Call is short for “emergency call”. When this vehicle suffers a serious collision or gets in an emergency, pressing this button connects to the call center with the highest priority. The customer service staff will obtain important user and vehicle data, and will assist the user in escaping danger, dispatching an ambulance to the scene immediately if necessary to ensure the user's safety.

- When you press and hold the E-call button for less than two seconds, a prompt message is displayed on the multimedia touchscreen: "Press and hold the SOS button for emergency rescue".
- When you press and hold the E-call button for two seconds or longer, a call is made to emergency rescue center via the multimedia system. To hang up, tap the button on the multimedia touchscreen.

REMINDER

- In order to ensure passenger safety, as long as the E-Call button is pressed for more than 2s, a specialist from BYD emergency rescue center will call back the user telephone even if he/she hangs up, .
- When there is a serious accident, the system will automatically call the emergency rescue center. In case of emergency, an automatic E-Call is answered by default.

②Cloud-Call

Cloud-call refers to roadside assistance. If your vehicle fails, pressing this button sends a "roadside assistance" signal to the BYD Intelligent Service Center, which will provide assistance including roadside assistance, information provision, and considerate help.

- When the user touches the cloud-call button for less than 2 seconds, the multimedia will pop up a prompt box showing the words "Please long press to Call BYD Intelligent Service ". You must press and hold this button for more than two seconds in order to use the function.
- When you press and hold the button for at least two seconds, the multimedia system directly calls the Intelligent Service Center. To hang up, tap on the multimedia touchscreen.
- When you do not know the specific location or is not convenient to operate, press the Cloud-call button to request remote navigation assistance. Cloud-Call will locate the destination and send it to the locomotive. The vehicle system then automatically activates the map and navigates to the destination.

04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/ Discharging

Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- Never allow juveniles to touch or use the charging equipment, and always keep them away during charging, as the charging equipment is a high-voltage electrical appliance.
- Charging may affect medical or implanted electronic devices. Consult the device manufacturer before charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a relatively safe environment, and avoid charging in areas with fire, dangerous liquid chemicals, thunder, flammable and combustible substances or heat sources.
- Use only certified charging equipment specifically designed for electric vehicles and consistent with applicable national standards:
  - Do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and ports to avoid charging failure and fire.
  - Uncertified products are strictly prohibited.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands and touch the exposed metal of the charging port or charging base.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment when charging, including abnormal smell or smoking, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- To avoid the damage of vehicle, do not shake the charging connector when charging, otherwise the vehicle charge port may be damaged.
- Do not conduct vehicle repairs during charging.
- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charging port hatch before driving.
- If you want to use any medical equipment in the vehicle, please confirm with the manufacturer before use whether the normal operation of the equipment will be affected by charging, which may cause abnormal operation of the equipment and personal injury.
- When the vehicle is charged with an external power supply, it is normal that the cooling fan and A/C compressor may operate automatically for the high-voltage battery to cool down.

Charging Precautions

- AC or DC* charging is available in any power mode. To ensure safety, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging. When charging, the vehicle cannot enter the "OK" gear.
- To prevent the charging port cover from malfunction, do not open and close the cover repeatedly. It is recommanded that the time interval to open and close the cover is over 1 second.
- When the external power supply is cut off for a short time and then recovered again, BYD charging equipment automatically restarts charging, without the need for reconnecting.
- If the charging port hatch and charger are frozen, do not forcibly open the

charging port hatch or pull out the charger.

- Precautions for avoiding damages to charging equipment:
  - Before starting the vehicle, make sure that the charging device is disconnected, as the charging device locking mechanism can cause damage to the charging device and the vehicle if the charging connector is not inserted in place and the vehicle is driven with the transmission gear engaged.
  - Do not close the charging port hatch when the charging port protective cover is open.
  - Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
  - Do not hit the charging equipment, and prevent mechanical damage due to falling or collision.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
  - Do not expose the charging equipment to heat.
- Precautions before charging:
  - When the charging port hatch is locked, do not force it open.
  - Ensure that there are no foreign objects in the charger and charging port, and the electric shock protection cap of the charger terminal is not loose or deformed.
  - Hold the charger, aim it at the charging port and push it in. Check to ensure it is properly inserted.
- Precautions during charging:
  - The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. To ensure the charging power, it is recommended not to turn on the A/C.
  - It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
  - It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging.Do not block the air intake grille.
  - It is normal that the charging power may fluctuate a short time as displayed on the instrument cluster when the battery is heated during charging.
  - During charging, the expected remaining time for a full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster. The remaining time for a full charge may vary depending on such different conditions as temperature, SOC, and charging facilities.
  - During charging, battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
  - Before charging is completed, battery equalization is activated to improve the service life, which may prolong the charging time.
- Precautions after Charging:
  - Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
  - Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector.
  - Do not forcibly pull out the charger when the charging port is locked for fear of damaging the charging port.
  - After charging, please unlock it first and then pull out the charging plug.
  - After the charger is unplugged, reinsert the charging port protective cover and close the port hatch to prevent water or foreign matters that may affect the normal use.

- Battery temperatures that are too low or too high can compromised vehicle charging performance.
  - In the case of low-temperature charging, battery thermal management can improve the lowtemperature charging ability, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased.These are normal phenomenons.
  - In cold regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle indoors with heating.
  - In hot regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a cool and ventilated place.
- Recommendations for improving the driving experience:
  - Charge the vehicle immediately when the SOC bar on the instrument cluster reaches the red area, for it indicates that the high-voltage battery is about to run out and failure to do so reduces the battery life.
  - To improve your experience, it is recommended that you charge the vehicle immediately after using it, as the battery is relatively hot and has better charging performance.
  - Household portable AC charging refers to charging with an AC charging adapter (referred to as 3-7 connector) equipped on the vehicle. A dedicated 230V 50Hz 10 A AC line and outlet is recommended. The purpose of using a dedicated line is to protect the line from tripping due to line breakage or high-power charging of the high-voltage battery.
  - If the vehicle will not be used for a long time, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.
  - Recommendations for the use of the household portable AC charging: When stopping charging, first disconnect the vehicle plug of the charging equipment, and then disconnect the power supply plug of the power supply end.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault State	Possible Causes	Solutions
Charging unavailable: with physical connection completed and charging started	Charging card in arrears or charging pile fault	Inquire about the charging card fees or contact station staff for solutions.
	Improper connection of AC charging adapter	Ensure the proper charger plug length and connection position of the charging equipment.
	Over-discharge of 12V battery	Connect the plug with a 12V power supplied from other vehicles. After the vehicle is started, the 12V battery starts to be charged.
	Standard 230V 50Hz 10A grounded socket is de-energized	Confirm whether the overload protection of the power supply has been triggered. Please use another outlet.
	Fault of vehicle or AC charging adapter	If powertrain fault warning light on the instrument cluster is on or charging system fault message is displayed, stop charging

Fault State	Possible Causes	Solutions
		immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	The highvoltage battery temperature is too low or too high	Allow the high-voltage battery to be heated or cooled before charging, place the vehicle at an appropriate temperature, and charge the vehicle after the temperature is normal.
	High-voltage battery fully charged	Charging is stopped automatically when the high-voltage battery is fully charged.
Charging interrupted	Charging cables not fully connected	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.
	Charging adapter switch pressed	Charging is stopped when the charging adapter switch is pressed and reconnect the adapter to start charging.
	Power failure	After the power supply is restored within a certain period of time, it is necessary to reconnect the charging adapter to start charging.
	High-voltage battery overtemperature	After the charging stops automatically, charge the battery after it cools down.
	Vehicle or charging pile fault	Check if there is any charging pile or vehicle fault prompt, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if necessary.

Charging

- Check before charging:
  - Check the charging device for abnormalities such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.
  - Do not charge when the charging connection becomes loose.
  - Make sure the port is clear of fluids or foreign objects, and its metal terminals are not rusty or corroded.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.

Household Portable AC Charging

Before Using the Household Portable AC Charging

- To avoid serious personal injury, please carefully read and follow the charging safety warnings in the charging instructions in this chapter.
- To avoid damage to the charging equipment and vehicle, please carefully read and follow the safety precautions for charging in the charging instructions in this chapter.

Equipment Descriptions

- The AC charging connection device can connect the vehicle with the household stander 230V 50Hz 10A

single-phase two-stage ground socket to charge.

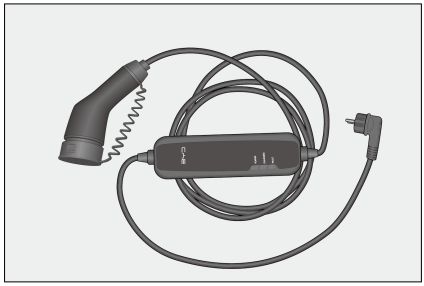
- The power socket shall be a household socket conforming to relevant national standards to avoid circuit damage and tripping caused by high-power charging, so as not to affect the normal use of other equipment.
- It consists of a power plug(complying with National standards), charger, plug/charger protection cover, a connecting cable, referred to as 3-to-7 adapter. The plug is connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- The use of special AC circuit and power supply socket (230V, 10A) is recommended.
- Equipment specifications: 230V AC 50Hz 8A
- Charging time: refer to the charging time prompt on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

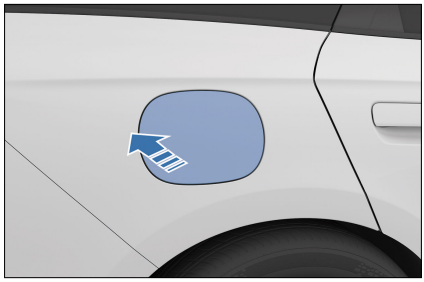
- Please contact a BYD authorized service provider or local electrician and select an appropriate power supply as required for the charging equipment.
- When charging with an on-board charger, please activate the anti-theft alarm.

Charging Instructions

1. Open the charging:
   - Unlock the vehicle and press the charging port cover to open it automatically.



2. Open the protective cover of AC charging port:
   - Open the caps for the charging connector and the socket, and make sure that the ends of the charging connector and socket are free of obstructions.



3. Connect the power supply port:
   - Plug the 3-to-7 power supply plug into the household socket and the indicator is red and continue to light.
4. Connect the vehicle charging port:
   - Plug the charging connector (3-to-7 adapter) into the port and make sure it is tight.
   - Once the charger is connected properly, the charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster goes on. The charging indicator of the 3-7 connector will flash (green).

REMINDER

- After the 3-7 connector indicator flashes (green light), an appointment for charging can be set through the instrument settings. See the smart charging function settings in this chapter for the setting process.
- Reservation charging cannot be used when the remaining battery is too low.

Instructions for Stopping Charging

1. End the charging:
   - When the vehicle is fully charged, charging stops automatically.
   - To stop charging in advance, go to the next step.
2. Disconnect the charger from the charging port
   - If the charging port anti-theft lock is deactivated, directly press the mechanical button of the charger and pull it out.
   - If the anti-theft mode of the electrical lock is active, press the unlock button on the key or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby), then press the mechanical button of the charging connector to pull out the charging connector or pull out the charging connector directly.

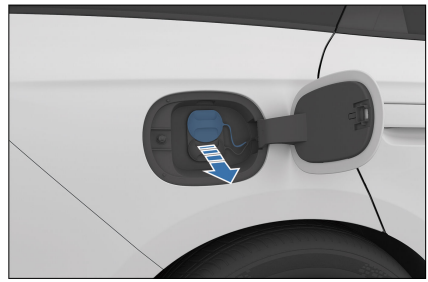
CAUTION

- When stopping charging, first disconnect the vehicle plug of the charging equipment, and then disconnect the power supply plug of the power supply end.

REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlocking button on the key (during charging in the OFF gear) or the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- Unlock the vehicle to deactivate the anti-theft lock before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.
- The working mode of the charging port anti-theft lock can be set through the instrument cluster or infotainment system. See ***P106***.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see "Charging Port Emergency Unlocking" in "Control Function of Charging Port Electric Lock" for details..

3. Disconnect the power plug.
4. After closing the AC charging port protective cover of the vehicle, press the charging port cover closing button to close the charging port cover.
5. After discharging, put the 3-to-7 adapter onto the trunk lid.



Three-phase AC Charging with Charging Pile

1. **Equipment Descriptions**

Three-phase AC charging box

- Charge the vehicle with the charging box. See the Owner's Manual or relevant instructions for the use of the charging equipment.
- Equipment specifications: 400V/3P 50/60Hz 16A
- Three-phase AC charging box: It consists of a charging box, charger, and a connecting cable. See the charging box manual for information about the circuit breaker and emergency stop switch (The drawings are for illustration only).

Three-phase AC charging pile*

- Use three-phase AC charging piles in public places to charge the vehicle. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
- Equipment specifications: 400V/3P 50/60Hz 16A
- AC connection device: It consists of a power plug (complying with local standards), charger, plug/charger protection cover, and a connecting cable, which is referred to as a 7-7 connector. The power plug is connected to the power outlet of the charging pile, and the charger is connected to the charging port of the vehicle (The drawings are for illustration only).

WARNING

- For specific charging safety warnings, see ***P90***.

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the parking position of the vehicle before charging, and ensure that the charging cable is not straightened during charging.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to use early stop set for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- For specific charging precautions, see ***P90***.

REMINDER

- Make sure to properly identify the power plug and charging connector to avoid a reverse connection when using the 7-7 connector.
- When the external power supply is cut off for a short time and then recovered again, BYD charging

REMINDER

equipment automatically restarts charging, without the need for reconnecting.

- The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock.

2. **Charging Instructions**

Connect the vehicle to an AC charging pile by the 7-7 connector, or connect the vehicle to an AC charging pile/box by the charging connector of this pile/box to begin AC charging.

Instant charging method:

- Unlock and open the charging port cover, and then open the charging port cap:
  - Refer to ***P93*** to unlock and open the charging port cover, and then open the charging port cap.
- Connect the power supply port:
  - Skip this step if a three-phase AC charging box is used for charging.
  - Skip this step if the AC charging pile equipped with a charger is used.
  - If a three-phase AC charging pile is used and the charging pile is not equipped with a charger, it is necessary to use a 7-7 connector. When using it, connect the power plug to the power outlet on the charging pile.
- Connect the vehicle charging port:
  - Insert the charger of the charging device into the charging port, and lock it reliably.
- Charging settings:
  - This step can be skipped for a threephase AC charging box or an AC charging pile without setting options in public places.
  - For AC charging pile/box subject to authentication, swipe the card or scan the QR code. For details, see the user manual for charging pile/box.
- The charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up.
- During charging, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging screen.
  - Scheduled charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P100*** for detail.
- The charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up.

3. **Instructions for Stopping Charging**

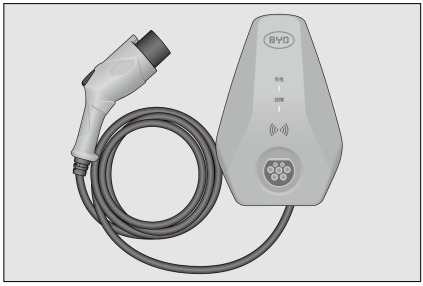
- End the charging:
  - The charging is stopped automatically when the charging equipment is set to stop charging in advance or when the vehicle is fully charged.
- Disconnect the charger from the charging port:
  - Refer to ***P93*** to disconnect the charger from the charging port.
- Disconnect the power plug:
  - If a 7-7 connector is used, it is recommended to pull out the charger first and then disconnect the power plug.
  - This step is not required if the charging box is used to charge the vehicle.

- Skip this step if the AC charging pile equipped with a charger is used.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Put the charging equipment in order.
  - Place the charger at the designated position in the AC charging pile/box (if used).
  - Put the 7-7 connector (if used) in order.

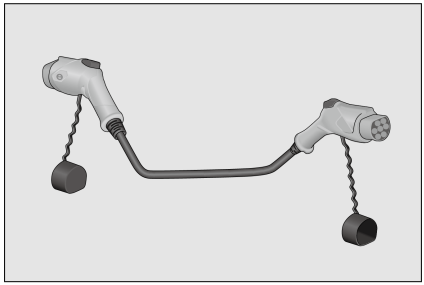
Using AC Charging Piles

1. Equipment descriptions

- Single-phase AC charging box*
  - Charge the vehicle with the charging box. See the Owner's Manual or relevant instructions for the use of the charging equipment.
  - Single-phase AC charging box: It consists of a charging box, charger, and a connecting cable. See the charging box manual for information about the circuit breaker and emergency stop switch.



- Single-phase AC charging pile*
  - Use single-phase AC charging piles in public places to charge the vehicle. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
- AC Charging Connection*: It consists of a power plug (complying with local standards), charger, plug/charger protection cover, and a connecting cable, which is referred to as a 7-7 connector. The power plug is connected to the power outlet of the charging pile, and the charger is connected to the charging port of the vehicle.



REMINDER

- Make sure to properly identify the power plug and charging connector to avoid a reverse connection when using the 7-7 connector.

- Three-phase AC charging pile*
  - Use AC charging piles in public places to charge the vehicle.
  - The vehicle can also be charged with BYD three-phase AC charging piles. See the User's Manual or relevant instructions for the use of the charging equipment.
  - Charging time: refer to the charging time prompt on the instrument cluster.

2. Charging Instructions

- Unlock the vehicle and open the charging:
  - Open the charging port hatch by following the procedures for

unlocking the charging port hatch described in the Household Portable AC Charging.

- Connect the power supply port:
  - This step is not required if the charging box is used to charge the vehicle.
  - Skip this step if the AC charging pile equipped with a charger is used.
  - If a single-phase AC charging pile is used and the charging pile is not equipped with a charger, it is necessary to use a 7-7 connector. When using it, connect the power plug to the power outlet on the charging pile.
- Connect the vehicle charging port:
  - Insert the charger of the charging device into the charging port, and lock it reliably.
- Charging settings:
  - Skip this step if an AC charging box or a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
  - For AC charging pile/box subject to authentication, swipe the card or scan the QR code. For details, see the user manual for charging pile/box.
- The charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up.
- During charging, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging screen.
  - At this time, the Reservation Charging can be set through the multimedia system. See "***P98***" in this chapter for the setting process.

3. Instructions for Stopping Charging

- End the charging:
  - The charging is stopped automatically when the charging equipment is set to stop charging in advance or when the vehicle is fully charged.
- Disconnect the charger from the charging port:
  - Press the key unlock button or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby), and then pull out the charger.
- Disconnect the power plug:
  - If a 7-7 connector is used, it is recommended to pull out the charger first and then disconnect the power plug.
  - Skip this step if the AC charging pile equipped with a charger is used.
- Close the AC charging port flap. (Refer to ***P98***).
- Put the charging equipment in order.
  - Place the charger at the designated position in the AC charging pile/box (if used).
  - Put the 7-7 connector (if used) in order.

WARNING

- Do not drop the 7-7 connector from a height or move it by directly pulling its cable. Take caution during moving and store it in a cool place after use.

Charging with DC Charging Piles

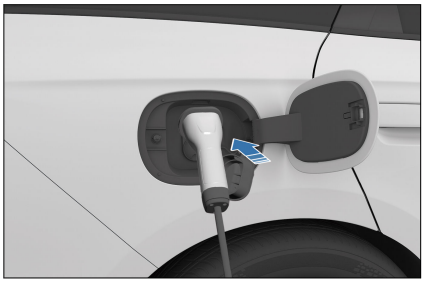
1. **Equipment Descriptions**

- Charge the vehicle with DC charging piles in public places, which are generally installed in specific charging stations.
- Equipment specifications: Please view the relevant charging pile instructions.

- Charging time: refer to the charging time prompt on the instrument cluster.

2. **Charging Instructions**

- Connect the vehicle to a DC charging pile by the charging connector of this pile to begin DC charging.
- Instant charging method:
  - Before charging, the door lock of the vehicle should be unlocked, and the power gear is recommended to be in the "OFF" gear.
  - Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
  - Connect the vehicle charging port:
    - Connect the charging connector of the charging pile to the charge port, and lock it securely in place.



  - Operate the charging equipment to start charging.
  - The charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up.
  - During charging, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging screen.

3. **Instructions for Stopping Charging**

- End the charging:
  - The charging pile stops charging auto matically when it is set to stop charging in advance or when the cahrging is finished.
- Disconnect the charger from the charging port:
  - Press the mechanical lock button of the DC charging connector to pull out the connector.
- After DC charging with a charging pile, properly place the charging equipment. Put the charging connector to the designated position of the charging pile.
- Reinsert the DC charge port cap and close the port door.

WARNING

- See section "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.

CAUTION

- After charging, if the charging connector cannot be pulled out, please contact customer service personnel for the charging pile immediately.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

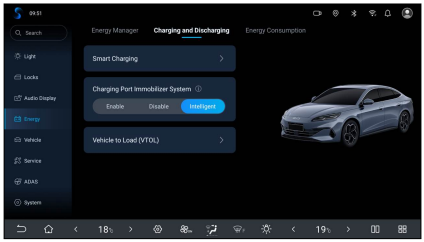
REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Smart charging (AC charging only)

- The vehicle supports desktop application icon, vehicle setting and intelligent voice to open the charging setting interface:
  - Go to the setting interface through the Smart Charging APP in the multimedia application list;

- Go to the "Smart Charging" setting interface through touchscreen → Settings → Energy → Charge/ Discharge.



- Go to the setting interface by calling "Hi, BYD. Turn on/make an appointment to the Smart Charging"; "Hi, BYD. I want to use the Smart Charging"; and "Hi, BYD. Please turn on/make an appointment to the Smart Charging".
- The factory setting mode is the Instant Charging, so Reservation Charging is turned off.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the reservation charging ON①, set the charging start time ② and repeat cycle ③, then save the settings.
- After successful setting of the Reservation Charging, a prompt of the charging start time is given by the multimedia system if the charger is connected or the power button is pressed to power off the vehicle; at this time, you can switch to Instant Charging as needed.
- The factory setting mode is the Instant Charging, so Reservation Charging is turned off.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the reservation charging ON①, set the charging start time ② and repeat cycle ③, then save the settings.
- After successful setting of the Reservation Charging, a prompt of the charging start time is given by the multimedia system if the charger is connected or the power button is pressed to power off the vehicle; at this time, you can switch to Instant Charging as needed.
- Users can tap the Smart Charging settings icon to turn off the "Plug in charger" reminder and "Power off" reminder in the "Reservation Charging Reminder".

REMINDER

- The smart charging function is only developed for BYD AC slow charging equipment. When the vehicle owner uses non-BYD certified AC slow charging equipment, this function should be turned off. Otherwise, the charging equipment may not respond, resulting in the failure of charging, resulting in vehicle power loss and insufficient battery power. If it needs to be applied to public charging facilities, please confirm that the facilities support vehicle-end reservations.
- When the battery power is too low, the vehicle will be charged at the bottom before entering the reservation. When charging at the bottom, the multimedia will still be reminded to turn off the engine and connect the charging gun, and the corresponding warm tips will appear under the instrument.
- The instant charging on PAD is effective only for current preset. To cancel all presets, please turn off the preset charging switch on the setting interface.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins

REMINDER

immediately after a DC charging connector* is connected.

Discharging Instructions

The vehicle supports the Vehicle To Load (VTOL) function:

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- Discharge safety warnings are the same as charging safety warnings (see Charging Instructions).
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.
- Never use the charging equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the charging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment* when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device*, please refer to the precautions for charging equipment included in ***P90***.
- Before VTOL discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.
- Before discharging, please confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range.

REMINDER

- Try to use this function when the SOC is high.
- The static power consumption of the whole vehicle will increase when the Vehicle to Load (VTOL) of the vehicle with "OFF" gear is connected for a long time without output. It is recommended that the user pull out the discharge gun when the equipment is not in use.
- The VTOL function is restricted when the vehicle SOC is low.
- In order to ensure the endurance, the discharge power will be limited at low temperature.

Vehicle-to-Load (VTOL)

Inspection before Discharging

- Discharge safety warnings are the same as charging safety warnings. To avoid serious personal injury, please carefully read and follow the charging safety warnings in the charging instructions in this chapter.
- Precautions for discharging are the same as those for charging. To avoid

damage to the charging equipment and vehicle, please carefully read and follow the safety precautions for charging in the charging instructions in this chapter.

- Ensure that the battery capacity of the vehicle to be discharged is not below 15%.
- In case of any situation above, do not perform the charging operation, or it may cause a short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.
  - Ensure the VTOL connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Make sure that the charging port is free of water or foreign matters, and that the metal terminals are not damaged or affected by rust or corrosion.

Equipment description:

- Vehicle-to-load (VTOL) equipment: It consists of a discharger, socket, cable, and discharger protection cover.
- The rated 230V 50Hz 16A Vehicle-to-Load (VTOL) is realized through VTOL connection, and the maximum discharge power is 3.3kW.

Starting discharging

1. Open the charging port cover and the charging port protective cover:
   - Before discharging, deactivate the anti-theft function.
   - Unlock the charging port cover switch, and open the charging port cover and charging port protective cover (refer to ***P93***).
2. Connect the discharge device:
   - Connect the VTOL discharger into the charging port reliably.
3. Start discharging
   - After the switch button on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator stays on (red), indicating that the socket can be used.
   - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Instructions for Stopping Discharging

1. Stop discharging:
   - Disconnect the load.
   - The following steps are only operated in an emergency (not recommended).
2. Disconnect the discharging equipment:
   - When the vehicle is unlocked with anti-theft function activated, press the mechanical button on the discharger and unplug it from the charging port.
   - Close the charging port cap and the port cover (see Household Portable AC Charging).
3. Put the equipment in order:
   - Put the discharge equipment on the trunk cover after the discharge is completed.

Discharging Duration Setting Instructions

- After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, the VTOL function is automatically activated. At the same time, the countdown can be observed on the instrument cluster and the multimedia touchscreen. The default duration of single discharging on the multimedia touchscreen is 5 hours.
  - When the vehicle is powered off and discharged to a low SOC, tap the "Start the engine to generate

electricity when the power is too low" switch to enable the function if it is necessary to start the engine for continuous discharging.

- To set VTOL, go to multimedia touchscreen → ⚙ → Energy → Charge/Discharge.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, tap the Vehicle To Load (VTOL) button to turn it on or off as needed.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered ON and discharged to a low SOC, the vehicle automatically starts the engine for power generation without setting.

  - The user can click the "Set" button of single discharge duration on the central control screen to enter the discharge duration setting interface to set the required discharge duration.

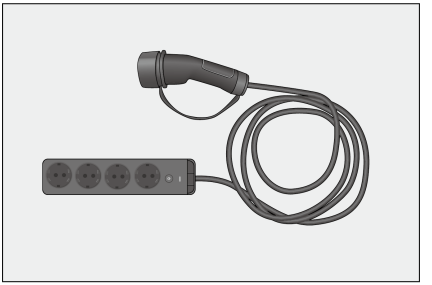
CAUTION

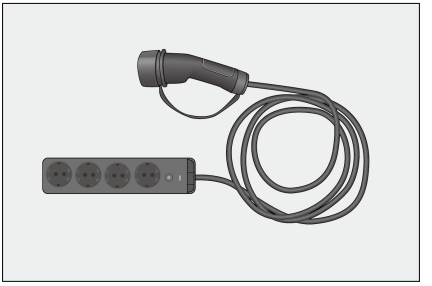
- The discharging function cannot be enabled when the discharger is not connected. Tapping the "VTOL" button makes it go on for a while and then go off, which is normal.
- When the discharging is started, if the power of the vehicle is too low and less fuel is left for power generation or the discharging time is set too long, the vehicle may be not discharge according to the set time, so the VTOL function will be turned off in advance, which is normal.

VTOL Method*

1. **Equipment Descriptions**

- Vehicle-to-load (VTOL) equipment:
  - The Vehicle To Load (VTOL) is made possible through the VTOL equipment. (Pictures for reference only. The actual local plug standard prevails.)
- Equipment specifications: Rated 230V/16 A/50Hz
  - The Vehicle To Load (VTOL) is made possible through the VTOL equipment with a maximum discharging power of 3.3kW.





2. **Operating Instructions for Discharge Connection**

- Before discharging, deactivate the anti-theft function.
- Unlock and open the charging cover, only remove the upper cap of the charging port and keep the lower cap closed to prevent the lower port from

plugging water under water conditions during discharging.

- Inspection before discharging:
  - Ensure that the battery capacity of the vehicle to be discharged is not below 15%.
  - Ensure the VTOL connecting device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Make sure that the charging port is free of water or foreign matters, and that the metal terminals are not damaged or affected by rust or corrosion.
  - In case of any situation above, do not perform the discharging operation, or it may cause a short circuit or electric shock, resulting in personal injury.
- Connect the VTOL equipment:
  - Connect the VTOL discharger into the charging port reliably.
- Start discharging:
  - Press the switch on the discharging outlet and wait for a few seconds. If the outlet indicator (red) stays on, the outlet can be used.
  - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

3. **Discharging Duration Setting Instructions**

- After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, the VTOL function is automatically activated. At the same time, the countdown can be observed on the instrument cluster and the infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of single discharging on the infotainment touchscreen is 5 hours.
- To set VTOL, go to (infotainment system) → New Energy → Discharging Settings.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, tap the Vehicle To Load (VTOL) button to turn it on or off as needed.
- When the vehicle is powered off and discharged to a low SOC, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch to enable the function if it is necessary to start the engine for continuous discharging.

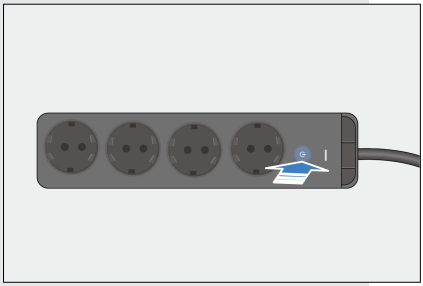
REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered ON and discharged to a low SOC, the vehicle automatically starts the engine for power generation without setting.

- Tap Settings on the touchscreen to set the required discharging duration.

CAUTION

- The discharging function cannot be enabled when the discharger is not connected. Tapping the "VTOL" button makes it go on for a while and then go off, which is normal.
- When the discharging is started, if the power of the vehicle is too low and less fuel is left for power generation or the discharging time is set too long, the vehicle may be not discharge according to the set time, so the VTOL function will be turned off in advance, which is normal.

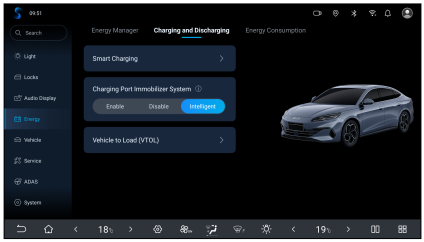


4. **Instructions for Stopping Charging**

- Stop discharging:
  - Disconnect the load.
  - The following steps are only operated in an emergency (not recommended).
- Disconnect the discharging equipment:
  - When the vehicle is unlocked with anti-theft function activated, press the mechanical button on the discharger and unplug it from the charging port.
- Close the charging port protection cover and the charging port hatch (refer to Household Portable AC Charging).
- Put the equipment in order:
  - Put the discharge equipment on the trunk cover after the discharge is completed.

Charge Port Anti-theft Lock

- The charging port of the vehicle has an anti-theft function to prevent theft. This function is deactivated by default. To activate the anti-theft lock function, go to (infotainment system) → New Energy → Charging Port Anti-theft Lock Settings and select Activate.
- Select "On" or "Off" after entering the "Charging Port Electric Lock Working Mode".
- Under "Enable" charging port electric lock anti-theft, the user inserts the gun and the four doors, front compartment lid and trunk lid are locked. At this time, the charging gun will be locked. If the user needs to disconnect the charging gun, the whole vehicle can be unlocked.



Unlocking

- In the “Enabled" mode, users can unlock and unplug the charger in the following ways during charging:

No.	Electric Lock Anti-theft Mode Status	Four-door anti-theft lock state	Whether the vehicle is fully charged	Whether the charger can be unplugged
1	Activated	Locking	/	No
2	Activated	Unlocked	/	Yes
3	Deactivated	Unlocked	/	Yes
4	Smart/ Deactivated	Locking	Vehicle is fully charged	Yes
			Vehicle not fully charged	No
5	Smart	Unlocked	/	Yes

CAUTION

- After unlocking the charging connector, it can be pulled out within 30 seconds. After 30 seconds, it will lock again.

Emergency Unlocking

- When the electric lock fails and the charger cannot be unplugged, try to unplug it by manually unlocking the charge port.

1. Open the trunk. There is an emergency cable for the charging port hatch on the right side panel inside the trunk.
2. Unlocking the cable latch and pulling the emergency cable to unlock the charging port hatch.
3. Reset the emergency cable latch after the unlocking is complete.

- Press the unlock button on the intelligent key when the vehicle is powered off.
- Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's side door to unlock.
- Press the central door lock below the window inside the driver's door.

CAUTION

- The emergency zipper is only used for emergency unlocking during AC charging. If the charging gun cannot be unlocked during DC charging, please contact the charging equipment manufacturer.

REMINDER

- The charging port hatch cable is only functional when the vehicle is locked.
- If any abnormality or failure of the function is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Battery

Power Battery and Charging System

- The high-voltage battery is one of the power sources of the vehicle, which is located under the floor and can be recharged repeatedly. The high-voltage battery can be charged through the external power supply by means of household portable AC charging, AC charging pile charging, and DC charging pile charging*, and also by the motor when the vehicle is being braked, coasting or the engine is started.

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered ON, the high-voltage circuit is connected.
- When the high-voltage battery of a new vehicle is in a normal state, the driving range of the vehicle in pure electric mode varies due to different driving habits, road conditions, and temperatures as well as the use of power-consuming devices or not.
- In order to prolong the service life and ensure the safety of the battery, the battery system switches the charging mode to the trickle charging mode when the battery SOC is high, and the charging time may be lengthened.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of the vehicle that has been used for a period of time has natural attenuation, and its pure electric range will be reduced. When the driving range of your vehicle in pure electric mode is shortened, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for checking. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of electric mileage is normal.

High-voltage Battery Maintenance

- To keep the battery at its best, charge it fully with a AC charging adapter on a regular basis (at least once a week).

- When the vehicle is not to be used for more than 7 days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60%, so as to prolong its service life. When the vehicle is not to be used for more than 3 months, it must be charged to 100% and then discharged to 40%~60% SOC, so as to avoid battery performance worsening or even damage.

High-voltage Battery Heating Function in Low Temperature

- In a low-temperature environment, the high-voltage battery heating system starts up and heats the battery to speed up the low-temperature charging and ensure the power performance and driving range of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Non-professionals must not open the high-voltage battery pack. Any organization or individual shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents caused by disassembling or dismantling the battery without authorization.

CAUTION

- In case of any fault of the high-voltage battery, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- The high-voltage battery works normally at temperatures between -35°C and 60°C.
- Charging time may be prolonged when the working temperature of the high-voltage battery is high or low.

REMINDER

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

When the new energy vehicle is to be scrapped, please follow the following procedures:

1. Send the vehicle to a BYD recycling service outlet, which evaluates the scrap value of the high-voltage battery.
2. After the evaluation, send the vehicle to a vehicle recycling and disassembling enterprise to remove its high-voltage battery.
3. After the high-voltage battery is removed, hand over it to the recycling service outlet for repurchasing.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low Voltage Battery

- The vehicle supports the smart charging function, so it is not necessary to disconnect the negative terminal from the low-voltage battery for long-term parking. When the high-voltage battery SOC is sufficient, the vehicle can enable the high-voltage battery to charge the 12V battery, so

as to extend the endurance of the 12V battery.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off for smart charging, it makes such a normal sound as when the vehicle is powered on.
- Make sure that all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed when leaving the vehicle.

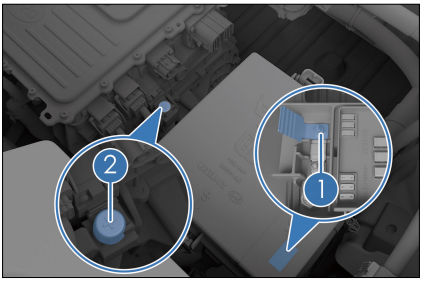
Wakeup Function after Power Loss of the Vehicle

- Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch:
  - The low-voltage battery has a sleep wake-up function. After the vehicle is stored for a long time, if the intelligent key cannot be used to find and unlock the vehicle, the low-voltage battery may have entered a sleep state. At this time, it is necessary to press the micro switch of the right front door handle (as shown in the figure below) to wake up the low-voltage battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be used normally.

- When the vehicle cannot be waked up and unlocked by the driver door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, a 12V power supply can be used to start the vehicle through two special cables for the jump start. In this case, the low-voltage battery SOC is low and the vehicle may become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for over 15 minutes to ensure that the low-voltage battery is fully charged. The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the front compartment fuse box.

① Positive terminal for the jump start in the front compartment fuse box

② Negative terminal for the jump start



If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above operations, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to carry out lapping fire for other vehicles, otherwise it may cause damage to the low-voltage battery.
- Please read the user's manual carefully and carry out the lapping operation in strict accordance with the instructions when the low-voltage battery needs to be started in case of emergency such as power loss or failure to use normally.

WARNING

- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery without permission, except in an emergency.
- Please disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before replacing the parts and repairing and checking the vehicle.

CAUTION

- The operation space of the front compartment distribution box is limited, and there are certain circuit safety risks at the same time. It is recommended to carry out the operation under the guidance of professionals.
- The jump start is only for starting the vehicle in a short time, so do not connect the overcurrent for a long time.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquid to prevent ingress.

Intelligent Charging

- Low-voltage battery SOC triggers the smart charging function to extend the battery endurance.
- In case of low high-voltage battery SOC, the vehicle may start the engine for power generation to enable the smart charging function.
- The vehicle supports the smart charging function, so it is not necessary to disconnect the negative terminal from the low-voltage battery for long-term parking.

CAUTION

- Low-voltage battery SOC triggers the smart charging function, resulting in a decrease of the high-voltage battery SOC or the driving range in pure electric mode displayed on the instrument cluster, which is normal.
- After the vehicle is locked, a small amount of fuel will be consumed and a small amount of exhaust gas will be discharged when the high-voltage battery is low enough to trigger the engine power generation function.

SOC Balance Function

- When the vehicle runs in dual modes, the SOC balance function is available to reserve power for such operations as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the SOC fluctuates around the balance point.
- The vehicle controller can memorize the SOC balance point set last time.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle runs stably at a certain speed after the engine startup, a part of the torque output by the engine drives the generator to generate electricity and charge the power battery.
- If the difference between the current power and the SOC balance point is large, it may take a long time to reach the set value.

SOC Balance Setting

The State of Charge(SOC)means the state that the user expects the vehicle to reach during driving. Pull down the status bar

on the top of the infotainment or go to (infotainment system) → New Energy → Energy Manager for SOC settings.

- Compulsory SOC hold: The priority is to maintain the power, and the power is as close as possible to the target power. If the destination is convenient for charging, it is recommended to reduce the target electric quantity to make full use of the stored electric energy to drive the vehicle and save fuel consumption; if the destination is inconvenient for charging, it is recommended to increase the target electric quantity to maintain the vehicle electric quantity and improve the vehicle experience. In order to ensure the driving experience, the whole vehicle will automatically adjust the lower limit of the balance point of electricity according to the altitude and ambient temperature.

In-Situ Power Generation Function

When the SOC is lower than a certain value during parking, the engine drives the alternator to charge the high-voltage battery. During power generation, the engine speed is higher than normal idle speed, which is a normal phenomenon. When the electric quantity is higher than a certain electric quantity, it will withdraw from in-situ power generation.

Mode Memory Function

- In the case of high SOC, the vehicle is automatically switched to EV mode when it is powered on. Driving in this mode is highly recommended.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous driving mode when it is powered on. The driver can manually select the required mode through the mode switch now.

Power Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

The function of stepping on the accelerator to generate electricity is to meet the user's demand for high-power power generation, while taking into account the NVH effect of the vehicle.

Operation method:

- In P gear and HEV mode, when the SOC is lower than a certain value, stepping on the accelerator pedal can trigger the power generation function.

REMINDER

- It is recommended not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time to generate electricity.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures, the power of electricity generated by pressing the accelerator pedal is limited by the charging power or the motor generating capacity, and the power changes on the instrument cluster.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is difficult to start or stops rotating frequently, check the vehicle immediately.
- In case of any abnormal noise in the powertrain, pull over the vehicle for inspection.
- In case of serious coolant and lubricating oil leakage in the powertrain, pull over the vehicle for inspection.

- Break-in is required for the powertrain. It is recommended to carry out it for the first 2,000 km in "ECO" mode, drive smoothly, and avoid high-speed driving. The following precautions can effectively extend the service life of the vehicle:
  - Avoid pressing the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid overspeeding during driving.
  - Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
  - Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
  - Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
  - During the running-in period, the driving mileage of HEV mode (with the engine working) shall not be less than 50% of the total mileage.

Trailer Towing*

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.
- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter (kg)	Data
Maximum towing capacity (kg)	750	Maximum permissible total towed trailer mass when towing
Maximum vertical load (kg)	75	Maximum vertical load (kg)

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tires inflated to 250 kPa, rear tires to 270 kPa.
- Please observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these instances, the vehicle speed must not exceed 100 km/h and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the tire pressure recommended for normal use.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or vehicle damage caused by violation of requirements of vehicle towing instruction. Vehicle damages caused

by towing or overloading are not covered under warranty.

- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for a detailed vehicle towing function instruction.

WARNING

- The trailer hitch of this vehicle is only used to tow the trailer. Please do not use it to get out of trouble or rescue the trapped vehicle, so as to avoid damage to the vehicle and even endanger personal safety.

Driving Safety Precautions

Driving after drinking is strictly prohibited

Even a small amount of alcohol reduces the reaction capability to different traffic conditions. The more one drinks, the slower he acts to traffic conditions. No driving after drink.

Speed control

Speeding is the main cause of car crashes. Generally speaking, the faster the speed, the greater the risk. Please keep a safe speed according to the road traffic conditions.

Maintaining the vehicle in safe driving condition

Tire blowouts or mechanical failures are extremely dangerous and in order to reduce the possibility of such failures, the condition of the car should be checked frequently and the specified inspection items should be compeleted regularly.

WARNING

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Suggestions for Vehicle Use

In order to prolong the service life of the power battery, the following suggestions are made:

- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to discharge to 40% ~ 60% after it is fully charged. The electric quantity should not be too high or too low. Please close the doors and windows when the vehicle is stored.
- When the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to fully charge and discharge it once every 3 months, and then charge it to 40% ~ 60% for storage.
- When the vehicle is in use, if the SOC indicator bar of the instrument enters the red alert grid, the battery power is insufficient, please charge it in time to avoid long-term use of low power.
- When the vehicle is used, it is recommended to use the on-board charging equipment to fully charge the vehicle once every 1 to 2 weeks.
- When the temperature is high, the vehicle should not be stored at

full charge for a long time. It is recommended that the vehicle be discharged to below 95% after it is fully charged.

- When the temperature is very low or very high, it is recommended that the vehicle should not be parked outdoors for a long time.
- When the vehicle is in use, repeated rapid acceleration and deceleration should be avoided as far as possible.
- When the vehicle is in use, it should be avoided for a long period of continuous use, as prolonged operation may cause the battery temperature to become too high, affecting the performance of the vehicle.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible in the event of the fault prompt.
- The vehicle performance will be limited when the battery temperature is high. Please have the vehicle placed until the battery temperature drops before using it.

WARNING

- In low or high temperature environment, the pure electric endurance mileage is reduced compared with normal temperature, and the power performance will be affected.

CAUTION

- If the electric mileage displayed by the meter drops to 0, it must be charged. If it is not charged within 7 days, it will cause permanent damage to the battery, and the resulting damage to the high-voltage battery pack will no longer be guaranteed by BYD.
- The driving range depends on the available electricity consumption of the vehicle, the age of the vehicle (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions, driving habits, etc.

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use 95E10 unleaded gasoline.

CAUTION

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

Refueling

- The fuel filler hatch is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.

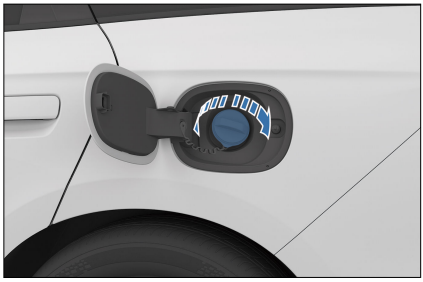
- The vehicle is closed and stays in the state of flameout and locking;

1. Open the fuel filler flap

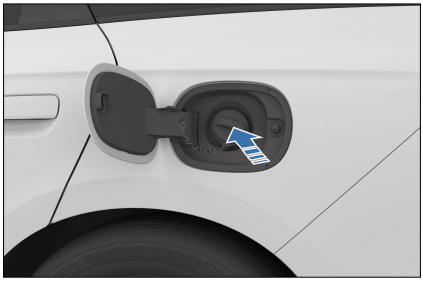
- Press the fuel filler flap on the left of the body to open it.

2. Rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it.

- Please wait patiently for 5 to 10 seconds, and then rotate the handle counterclockwise to remove the fuel tank cap. During this period, the fuel tank cap idling is normal. You may hear a hissing sound due to the makeup of the vacuum in the tank.



- If the fuel tank cap is idling and cannot be opened, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Emergency opening of fuel filler cap: Lever the blanking cap off, which is in the center of the fuel tank cap handle. Insert a slender guide rod (such as a gel pen refill) into the small hole till the end and keep, and rotate the handle counterclockwise to take the fuel tank cap off.



- The fuel tank cap is connected to the body cover with a lanyard to prevent the fuel tank cap from being lost. While refueling, place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel filler hatch.

3. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel filler hatch.

WARNING

- Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:
  - It is recommended to fill fuel outdoors.
  - Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
  - Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charger connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products including fuel oil, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging charger is not done by rule.

CAUTION

- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.
- Check whether the fuel filler cap is tightened and whether the fuel filler hatch is closed in time after refueling.
- If the fuel tank cap is not tightened, it may cause a light on the gauge .
- If the fuel filling is not completed within 15 min after the oil filler cap is opened, please close the oil filler cap and open it again, and then fill the fuel, otherwise the phenomenon of reverse injection of oil may occur during refueling.

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Following easy operations should be taken for extending the service life of the vehicle and saving fuel and repair costs: The followings are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and emergency braking consume more fuel.
  - Keep a constant speed according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Use cruise control under proper driving conditions.
  - The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C as far as possible. In nice weather, it is recommended to use the fresh air mode for ventilation.
  - Maintain proper tire pressure. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
  - Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
  - It is not recommended to stop and warm up the engine. It is recommended to start and drive slowly immediately after starting. This can make the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. Unless in an extreme low temperature environment, you can keep a high idle speed by stepping on the accelerator lightly at the “HEV-SPORT” N gear, and then start driving slowly after warming up.
  - When the engine is in a cold state, do not run at a high speed or drive with the acceleration pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting, so as to prevent damage to the engine.
  - Avoid prolonged idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for people for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
  - Avoid engine load deceleration or overspeed. The appropriate speed gear should be selected according to the road conditions.
  - Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and

observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.

- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Do not always put your foot on the brake pedal if unnecessary, because this may cause premature wear, overheating, and consumption of a large amount of fuel.
- Maintain a proper speed when driving on highways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed.
- Keep the front wheels properly aligned. Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This not only reduces the weight of the vehicle body, but also prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle features several different spaces for convenient storage of articles.
- The glovebox, side glovebox, and seat back file pockets are designed to store small and light items, while the boot is used to store larger and heavier items.
- Too much baggage or improper loading may affect the performance, stability, and normal running of the vehicle and reduce vehicle safety.
- For loading baggage, the total mass of the vehicle body, all passengers, and baggage shall not exceed the maximum allowable mass.
- Therefore, please read the following contents before loading baggage.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper loading affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may even result in collision accidents.
- Observe the total load limits and other loading guidelines in this Manual.
- Do not carry articles with strong magnetism to avoid interference with the normal running of the vehicle.

Carrying Items in the Passenger Area

- Properly place or fix all articles to prevent them from getting loose and

hurting passengers in the vehicle in case of collision.

- Make sure that the articles placed on the floor behind the front seats do not roll under the seat, so as not to affect the driver to operate the pedal or normal adjustment of the seat. Do not stack the articles higher than the backrests of the front seats.
- During driving, always keep the glovebox closed. If the glovebox is open, knees of passengers may be injured in case of collision or emergency braking.

WARNING

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Loading the Trunk

- Place the baggage evenly in the boot, and put the heaviest baggage at the front bottom as far as possible.
- Secure the articles with ropes or chains to make sure they do not move during driving.
- If the trunk lid cannot be closed due to the carriage of large articles, the vehicle exhaust may enter the passenger area. To avoid carbon monoxide poisoning, please refer to ***P119*** in this Manual.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

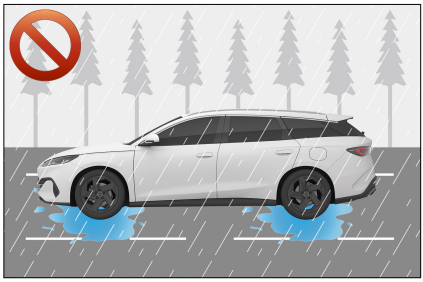
- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been subjected to accidents that may damage the bottom of the vehicle.

WARNING

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine should be limited to the extent that the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.
- When the tailgate is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must be started with the tailgate open, all windows shall be lowered and the interior air control system shall be adjusted according to the following prompts:
  - Select the “Fresh air" mode.
  - Select the "Face level vent and foot level vent" mode.
  - Set the fan speed at "High speed”.

Wading into Water

- The depth of water must be ascertained to ensure it will not exceed the lower edge of the vehicle body.
- For driving in water, turn off the A/C before starting the vehicle, engage the low gear, and then keep pressing the accelerator pedal gently to drive over the waterlogged road stretch at a steady and slow speed. Do not release the pedal midway, or the exhaust back pressure is generated to suck water into the engine and causes serious damage.



- Drive carefully as driving through deep water may wet the brakes. After driving through the flooded area, press the brake pedal several times continuously and gently to evaporate the water on the brake disc, so as to restore normal braking performance as soon as possible.

WARNING

- If there is water, mud and silt in the brake system, it may cause the brake to lag behind, thus prolonging the braking distance and preventing accidents.
- Drive carefully and avoid emergency braking after crossing flooded areas.

WARNING

- No water ingress into the engine is allowed! If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road. If the vehicle is running on a low-lying and waterlogged road, prevent water ingress into the engine; otherwise, the engine may be seriously damaged. The resulting vehicle fault and damage may not be covered by the warranty.
- Other systems like transmission, driving and electrical systems may also be seriously damaged upon submersion. The resulting vehicle fault and damage may not be covered by the warranty.

- In case of strong convective weather, try to choose a place with rain shelter for charging; if the vehicle is soaked in water or wades over the threshold position, it may cause water to enter the interior of high-voltage parts, and it is necessary to contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile for proper detection and treatment; it is strictly prohibited to drive on the road where the water is more than half of the tire.
- Impact of water ingress into high-voltage components:
  - High-voltage components are electronic devices. After the vehicle is soaked in water, drying the high-voltage components in the sun or air cannot ensure the full evaporation of water.
  - Water ingress may also greatly affect the insulation of high-voltage components; at the same time, the conductive substances contained in water may cause internal short circuits of high-voltage components or high-voltage systems. In this case, the safety and service performance

of the vehicle may be seriously affected.

- Water ingress into high-voltage components has a great impact on product protection level and withstand voltage performance, which may lead to a great safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To effectively prevent vehicle fires, please take the following precautions:

- Do not operate the engine at high speed by pressing the accelerator pedal continuously.
- Do not place any flammable or explosive materials in the vehicle.
  - In hot summer, the interior temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can be more than 70°C. If there are lighters, cleaning agents, perfume, and other flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle, it is easy to cause fires and even explosions.
- Make sure the cigarette butt is completely extinguished after smoking.
  - Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular inspection.
  - Regularly check whether there is oil leakage in the engine compartment, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not modify the vehicle's wiring or install any additional electrical appliances.
  - Installing other electrical appliances (such as high-power audio systems and lights) causes excessive wiring load, resulting in heating of the wiring harness and fires. Improper modification of electrical appliances and wirings causes abnormal heating and fires due to contact resistance.
  - Do not replace fuses with those beyond the rated specification of electrical appliances or with other metal wires.
- Park the vehicle in a proper place.
  - During parking, especially in summer, be sure to check whether there are flammables under the vehicle, such as hay, dead branches, leaves, or wheat straws. It is likely to cause a fire in case of the existence of flammables under the vehicle.
  - During driving, avoid roads with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and weeds as far as possible, or pull over the vehicle in time to check whether there are flammables under the vehicle after passing through such roads. Do not park the vehicle in a place exposed to the sun.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being repaired or serviced.
- Always keep portable fire extinguishers on the vehicle and know how to use.
  - Carry fire extinguishers with the vehicle and regularly check and replace them to ensure safety. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.

- In case of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize losses.
  - Generally, there are early signs of a fire, such as abnormal noise and odor in the vehicle body. If any, pull over the vehicle immediately and actively put out the fire according to the actual situation.
  - Call 119 fire alarm in time, and suggest contacting BYD authorized service shop and insurance company.
- Find out the origin of the fire. In case of any smoke in the front compartment, do not open the hood immediately (because this aggravates the combustion and spread of the fire due to air ingress. There are limited combustibles in the front compartment, so the hood shall be kept closed to control the flames, which is conducive to firefighting). The fire extinguisher in the vehicle can be used to put out the fire from the front hatch gap against the fire parts. Or the driver is supposed to ask for help from the passing vehicles. If more than one extinguisher can be borrowed, the user is supposed to open the front hatch and fight against the fire.
- After the fire brigade put out the fire, ask them for a rescue certificate and statement of fire cause.
- After the accident, contact the insurance company in time for post-accident handling.

REMINDER

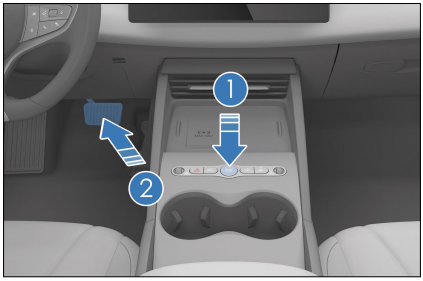
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key and press the "Start/Stop" button while stepping on the brake pedal. When the "OK" indicator on the instrument is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in a drivable state.
- Shift to "D" or "R" position, and then the electrical parking brake will be released automatically. You can drive when you hear the release sound of the electronic hand brake system motor



The vehicle cannot power on when

- The vehicle cannot power on when:
  - When the start button is pressed, if the smart key system warning lamp illuminates, the loudspeaker in the vehicle beeps, and the middle information display on the combination instrument shows "key not detected", it indicates that the electronic smart key is not in the vehicle or the interfered vehicle cannot be detected.

- The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, boot, etc.

- Possible causes for the failure of the normal start function when the "START/STOP" button is pressed:
  - If the smart key does not work, the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, and the information display screen on the instrument cluster displays a prompt about the low SOC of the key battery, the battery SOC of the key may have run out.
  - If the engine is started repeatedly in a short period of time, it is necessary to wait for 10 seconds before starting the vehicle.
  - In addition to the above, smart entry and keyless start systems do not work properly in some cases due to the environment in which they are used. See "Smart Entry and Start System" for details.

Activate the Auto Power On/Off Function

- The customer turns on the Auto power-on and Auto power-off functions through the Touchscreen→ Settings → Locks interface.

Auto Power On-Opening the Door

- Unlock by remote key/ microswitch/NFC/could services.
- After the first time of the driver’ s door opened, the vehicle is powered on and the instrument cluster and multimedia system lights up.
- Press the brake pedal and when the instrument cluster: OK indicator lights up and the vehicle is ready for travelling.

Auto Power On-Pressing the Pedal

- When the vehicle is powered off or the OK indicator is off.
- Press the brake pedal and when the instrument cluster: The "OK" indicator illuminates, indicating that the vehicle is drivable

Auto Power Off

- When the vehicle is parking but powered on:
- When the user locks the vehicle by remote key/microswitch/NFC from the outside, the vehicle is powered off automatically.

REMINDER

- The vehicle is powered on only at the first time the driver’ s door opened.
- Unlock and enter the vehicle from passenger’ s door and power the vehicle off after on. The Auto Power On function will not be activated again after that.
- When the function is deactivated, press the pedal or START button to power the vehicle on.
- Auto Power On function is not available with the hood open.
- In order to prevent false triggering of power off, Bluetooth and cloud services only respond to locking and do not execute the power off function when they are locked;
- If the Auto Power On is activated by opening driver’ s door, the vehicle will be automatically powered off when it locked by remote key/microswitch/NFC from the outside.

Starting the Vehicle in Emergencies

- Engage the parking brake firmly.

- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Set the gear to "P".
- The power gear is in the "OFF" position.
- Make sure the electronic smart key is inside the vehicle.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button for more than 15s to start the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not activate for more than 20 seconds at a time, or the wiring system will overheat.

Remote Start

Before Starting

1. Ensure the vehicle is powered off.
2. The gearshift lever is on "P".
3. Vehicle speed is less than 5km/h.

Remote Start with the Electronic Smart Key

1. The vehicle can be started by pressing and holding the "remote start/ flameout" button of the electronic smart key for 2s. After the vehicle is successfully started, the turn signal will flash for 3 times.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.
3. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.

Driving

- During driving, energy is recovered through the regenerative brake when the vehicle decelerates. However, do not accelerate or decelerate unnecessarily.
- The user can enter the relevant setting interface through Settings → Energy → Energy Manager to complete the setting, select the corresponding energy feedback mode according to the driving habits, and the vehicle will achieve the optimal feedback feeling according to the feedback mode and actual working conditions.
  - High: Provides maximum energy recovery with greater vehicle deceleration.
  - Standard: Takes longer to decelerate and travels further than Larger.
- Users can choose the energy feedback intensity according to their needs when releasing the accelerator to experience different senses of deceleration, and obtain different driving pleasures.

REMINDER

- Energy recovery may be limited when the battery temperature is too low/high or the charge is high.

REMINDER

- Energy recovery can not replace conventional braking, and the driver should apply braking in time according to the actual situation in the case of large deceleration and large downhill.
- The set accelerator release energy feedback intensity can be memorized. Even after the vehicle is powered off, the mode set last time remains valid when the vehicle is powered on next time.
- Do not set the energy regeneration intensity when the vehicle is running at a high speed. This may distract the driver and lead to accidents.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- Energy recovery can not replace conventional braking, and the driver should apply braking in time according to the actual situation in the case of large deceleration and large downhill.
- The set accelerator release energy feedback intensity can be memorized. Even after the vehicle is powered off, the mode set last time remains valid when the vehicle is powered on next time.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

Kick-Down Function

- During driving, when the vehicle is going uphill or it is necessary to accelerate rapidly or press the accelerator deeply, almost fully pressing the accelerator increases the pedal resistance and triggers this function, so that the engine speed increases to provide greater power for the vehicle.
- Higher battery SOC can ensure sufficient discharge power of the power battery, so that the engine can work normally and a better acceleration experience can be obtained.
- Battery fault, generator fault, and engine fault may affect the Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

Safety Check before Driving

Before long-distance driving, it is better to conduct a safety check on the vehicle, which will ensure your driving safety and increase your driving pleasure. You can also entrust BYD Automobile Authorized Service Shop to check on your behalf.

General Exterior Iinspections of Vehicle

- Tire: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Wheel nuts: Confirm whether nuts are loose or missing.
- Leakage: Check underneath the vehicle for leakage of fuel, oil, coolant or other liquids (except water droplets from A/C condensation) after the vehicle stops for a while.
- Lighting: Confirm that headlights, position lights, turn signals, and other lighting facilities all work normally. Check the light intensity of headlights.

General Interior Inspections of Vehicle

- Seat belt: Check whether the buckle can be fastened. Confirm that the seat belt is not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: confirm that the maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting and defroster work normally.
- Brake pedal: Confirm that the brake pedal has enough space for movement.

Inspections Inside the Hood

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Confirm that the coolant level is correct.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check the connector for corrosion or looseness, and check the shell of the battery for cracks.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

Inspections after Vehicle Startup

- Exhaust system: Listen for leaks. If there are any leaks, repair them immediately.
- Oil Level Gauge: Confirm that the vehicle is on the level ground, the N gear has been engaged, the engine is idling steadily, and the electronic parking has been pulled up. After the above conditions are met, enter the "journey data" of the multimedia screen, click the measurement beside the "engine oil level" gauge, and click the lighted "measurement" on the pop-up box after judging that the conditions are met.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and speedometer work normally.
- Brake: In a safe place, confirm that the driving direction of the whole vehicle is not biased to any side.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leakage and abnormal noise.

If everything is normal, you can enjoy the pleasure of driving.

REMINDER

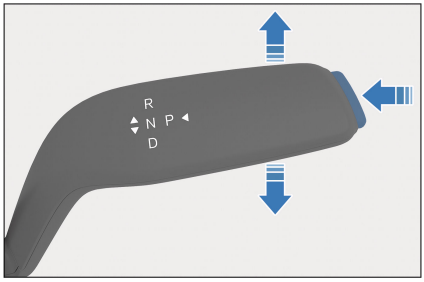
- Do not pile up children's toys in the vehicle. Such toys may affect the driving safety in case of emergency braking or collision.

Preparations Before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust the seat position, seat backrest angle, seat cushion height, head restraint height, and steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust the rearview mirrors and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belt.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear actuator is marked on the gearshift lever.
- "P": Park. Press the P gear button to park the vehicle. Start the vehicle and press the brake pedal to shift the lever from P to another position.



CAUTION

- To avoid damaging the transmission, press the P gear button only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

- Reverse. Shift to R only after the vehicle stops.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. However, the driver must ensure that the transmission is shifted to P before leaving the vehicle.
- "D": Drive, shift to D position to drive the vehicle normally.
- After successful gear shifting, release the gearshift lever, and it automatically returns to the central position.
- Turn the ignition on before shifting into "D".
- It is necessary to step on the brake at the same time when engaging the "P" gear or switching to the driving gear. For detailed operation, please refer to the instrument prompt.

WARNING

- If the vehicle is moved for a long time after the motor is turned off and the "N" gear is engaged, the transmission may be seriously damaged due to the failure of lubrication.

WARNING

- When the motor is running and the vehicle is in the "R"/"D" gear, always stop the vehicle by stepping on the brake pedal, as there is still force transmitted from the actuator and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.
- Do not step on the accelerator pedal when shifting gears when driving forward to prevent accidents.
- To avoid accidents, do not shift the gearshift lever to the "R" gear or press the P button during driving.
- Never coast downhill in "N" or "P", even if the motor is not running.
- To prevent the moving of the vehicle, pull up the EPB after the vehicle stops stably and press the P button.

Characteristics and precautions of EHS hybrid transmission:

- EHS hybrid transmission is a newly designed high-performance transmission, which combines the low fuel consumption of manual transmission with the comfortable operation of automatic transmission.
- In most driving situations, EHS hybrid transmission makes the vehicle smoother and more fuel-efficient when starting and shifting.
- The performance under some specific working conditions is normal. Please use it safely, for example:
  - Procedures for parking on flat ground: Park the vehicle on a suitable road, step on the brake pedal, pull up the EPB first, then release the brake pedal, and finally

engage the shift lever into the "P" position to shut down the engine.

- Steps for ramp parking: Step on the brake pedal on the ramp until the vehicle stops completely. Pull up the EPB first, then release the brake pedal, and finally engage the shift lever into the "P" position to shut down the engine. When parking facing downhill, turn the steering wheel so that the front wheel is against the curb. When parking facing uphill, turn the steering wheel so that the rear wheel is against the curb.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

When the vehicle is stationary and not in "P" gear, the user can pull down the shortcut bar→EPB through multimedia system to trigger the electronic parking switch, and the EPB will apply appropriate parking force. The indicator light Ⓟ on the instrument will flash first, and then it will be on, indicating that the EPB has been started, and there is a text prompt "electronic parking has been started".

CAUTION

- The Ⓟ flashing indicates the EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal to avoid sliding. Release the brake pedal after the indicator Ⓟ stays on.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Engaging EPB automatically when the ignition is switched off

- When the vehicle is stationary and the power gear is turned from "OK" to "OFF", the EPB will automatically pull up and the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument will light up.

Shifting into "P" automatically

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB activated" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise, there will be a risk of vehicle sliding to slight extent.
- This function is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. To ensure safety, make sure that the transmission is shifted to P before leaving the vehicle.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

- When the vehicle is parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift to D or R from P or N to automatically release EPB. The indicator goes out, and a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

CAUTION

- The brake pedal must always be pressed when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the cluster.
- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test (POST). In this process, the EPB system does not respond to any operations.

- When the vehicle is in D or R after start and EPB is engaged from the touchscreen, slowly press the accelerator pedal to a certain extent to automatically release EPB. The indicator (Ⓟ) goes out, and a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- During driving, if the braking is blocked or fails, press and hold the P button for emergency braking.

WARNING

- Avoid using the EPB system to stop the vehicle. The emergency braking function can only be activated in case of emergency situations such as pedal brake failure or brake pedal blocked.
- Because EPB cannot exceed the physical limit of road adhesion, using the emergency braking function when passing through curves, dangerous roads, and traffic congestion sections, or driving in severe weather conditions may cause the vehicle to drift, slip or deviate, so attention should be paid to avoid accidents.

CAUTION

- To ensure driving safety, avoid using the "P" button for emergency braking under normal circumstances. In case of emergencies such as power-assisted brake failure or brake pedal blockage, the driver must always maintain control of the vehicle and properly use the emergency braking function.

Trailer mode

The trailer mode mainly takes into account the automatic pull-up function of the electronic parking system. When the vehicle needs to be turned off and towed, or there is a fault, the trailer mode can be turned on to release the EPB parking function.

- The user can open the trailer mode by clicking the setting → vehicle control → driving control → electronic parking trailer mode setting interface.
- Entry conditions for EPB trailer mode (to be met simultaneously):
  - Set the gear to "P".
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The vehicle is not connected to the charging gun and is not in the charging state.

CAUTION

- When the conditions for entering the EPB trailer mode are not met,

CAUTION

the multimedia screen will give a corresponding prompt.

- After entering the trailer mode, the multimedia screen will always be in the trailer mode interface unless you click to exit the trailer mode.

- EPB trailer mode exit conditions (one of them is enough):
  - Turn off the trailer mode by tapping on the multimedia touch screen.
  - The driver presses the "P" button.
  - The vehicle is connected to the charging gun for charging.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, the indicator (P) on the instrument cluster stays on.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, the indicator (P) on the instrument cluster lights up for a few seconds and then goes out.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system performs self-inspection. The indicator (!) on the instrument cluster lights up for a few seconds and then goes out. If it does not go out, it indicates that the EPB system or braking system may be faulty. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- When the EPB is engaged or released, the driver may hear the sound of the EPB motor running.
- After the emergency braking function is activated, if burning smell or abnormal noise appears, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

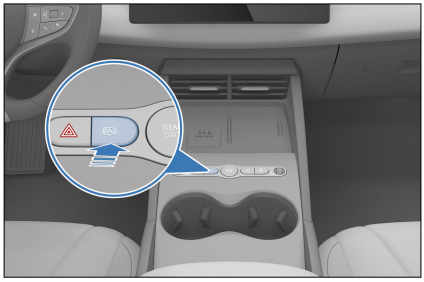
WARNING

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, the gearshift is not to be used to replace EPB when parking. EPB must be used instead, and the vehicle must be in "P" gear.
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) switch must not be operated when the vehicle is moving to prevent severe accidents.
- When the EPB is being pulled up or released, press the brake pedal as much as possible to prevent the vehicle from sliding and causing gear jamming when the EPB cannot provide sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) takes place when the vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights. When the AVH standby preconditions are met, AVH is activated if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle stops.

- Press the automatic parking switch to start the automatic parking, and the instrument will display the white AVH standby indicator. The instrument AVH indicator will turn green when the conditions for automatic parking function operation are met.
- Press the auto park function switch again to turn off the auto park function.



CAUTION

- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB can make AVH exit to the standby status. The vehicle exits AVH mode even if the AVH standby conditions are not met.

Preconditions for AVH Standby (All Must Be Met)

- The automatic parking function switch is turned on, and the instrument displays the white AVH standby indicator.
- The driver seat belt is fastened and the door is closed.
- The driving motor of the whole vehicle is started or the power gear is in the "OK" gear.
- The intelligent power braking system and the EPB system are trouble-free.

CAUTION

- The power-on AVH function is off by default. When it is on standby, the white indicator on the instrument cluster stays on.

AVH Running Conditions (All Must Be Met)

- The AVH function is on standby.
- The brake pedal has been pressed to bring the vehicle to a stop.
  - The automatic parking function is activated, the vehicle brake light and the high brake light are on, and the instrument AVH indicator turns green.
  - The automatic parking function directly enters the standby state after 10 minutes of operation, and automatically pulls up the EPB.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all the conditions must be met at the same time.
- For AVH to be activated, all conditions of automatic parking function must be met.
- When you shift from "D" to "R", the system automatically enters slow-moving condition, in which AVH is deactivated. When the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h, it exits the slow-moving condition automatically.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- When driving on the road with curbstone, drive slowly and keep the correct angle as far as possible. Avoid driving on objects with high and sharp edges or other road obstacles. Otherwise, the tire may be seriously damaged.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads or the shock would damage the tires.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.

- When the vehicle is on the road surface with low adhesion coefficient such as ice, snow, sand, wet ceramic tile or wet epoxy resin, please avoid parking on the ramp as far as possible to avoid sliding accidents.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating in a wrong way.

REMINDER

- The battery is located in the vehicle's chassis, so be careful to avoid bumping when driving.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.
- Do not keep the foot on the brake pedal all the time during driving. It may cause dangerous heating, wearing, and wasting of fuel.
- Slow down when driving down long steep slopes. and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Drive with care when accelerating or braking on slick roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- To avoid traffic accidents, make sure no occupant sticks his head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when there are children in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the power system and electrical components.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
  - Improper coolant will damage the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cable conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged when winter comes.
- Avoid the door lock frozen by ice and snow.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin into the door lock hole to prevent icing.
- Use washer fluid containing antifreeze.
  - Such products are available in BYD authorized dealers or service providers and all auto parts stores.
  - The mixing ratio of water and antifreeze shall comply with the manufacturer's instructions.

CAUTION

- Do not use other substitutes as washing fluid, which may damage the vehicle paint.

- Avoid accumulation of ice and snow under the mudguard.

- The accumulation of ice and snow under the mudguard may make steering difficult. When driving in cold winter, pull over the vehicle often to check whether there is ice and snow accumulated under the mudguard.

- It is recommended to carry several necessary emergency tools or items according to different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Driver Assistance

About Driver Assistance system

Driver Assistance systems Instruction

- The driver assistance system (hereinafter referred to as the "system") is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The system cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment. Although the system can provide a certain degree of help, it can not fully cope with all the situations that may occur during driving due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, complex weather and other environmental changes. Therefore, the driver is always the first person responsible for driving the vehicle, and should bear the full responsibility for safe driving in accordance with local laws and regulations.
- System functions are divided into driving assistance and safety assistance:
  - driving assistance: It provides two kinds of driving assistance functions with different degrees of intelligence, namely, adaptive cruise (ACC) and lane navigation (ICC), to help drivers drive easily.
  - Safety assistance: It provides front, side and rear safety assistance functions to help drivers drive safely.

WARNING

- Drivers should carefully read and understand the relevant agreements and supporting documents before using the system functions, understand and master the relevant knowledge of using the system in detail (including but not limited to the use guide of the driving assistance system, the general limitations of the driving assistance system, the specific meaning of each driving assistance function, the scope of application and methods of use, precautions, etc.). And strictly follow the relevant operating instructions in the use process, otherwise it may cause accidents, or even lead to property damage, personal injury and death. The Company shall not be liable for any property damage, personal injury or death caused by the driver's failure to comply with this manual, relevant agreements and supporting documents, unless otherwise mandatory by laws and regulations.
- The system cannot replace the driver's attentive driving and accurate judgment. When using the system functions, the driver should ensure that the vehicle is used in accordance with local laws and regulations, and should always hold the steering wheel,

WARNING

keep alert, pay close attention to all kinds of dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle when necessary to ensure safe driving, otherwise it may cause accidents, or even cause property damage and personal injury.

- The control vehicle and related expressions used in this manual are intended to convey in concise language what is relevant to the driver's use of the system. However, during the operation of the system, the driver is always the only driving subject of the vehicle. He should continuously monitor and respond to the operation of the vehicle and system, the external environment of the vehicle and related targets, and if necessary, he should immediately intervene and control the vehicle through the operation mode specified in this manual to ensure the safety of driving. Otherwise, it may lead to accidents. It even causes property damage and personal injury.
- The driver shall comply with local laws and regulations to

WARNING

legally use the functions of the driver assistance system, and shall not add functions, APPs, tools, etc. to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall he illegally collect and use personal information and geographic information data. The Company shall not assume any responsibility for any illegal acts caused by the user's abuse, misuse or unauthorized modification of the system functions and services, and shall have the right to temporarily shut down the system functions or even terminate the provision of services to the user, and shall have the right to retain the data involved in the user's illegal acts so as to provide them as evidence to institutions with legal access procedures.

Driver assistance system sensor

- The system is equipped with millimeter wave radar, camera and other sensors.

1	MmWave radars x 3
2	Multifunction video controller x 1

Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- The driver shall ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and that the front windscreen is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the front windshield may affect the function or performance of the system.
- When the radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument display screen or central control screen may display the corresponding text prompt, and the driver can clean and maintain accordingly. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.

- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions are as follows:
  - When the radar or camera window surface is frozen or frosted, it is recommended to clean it with warm water or cleaning solution containing antifreeze until it melts, and then wipe the surface with dry optical wiping cloth, cotton cloth and flannelette until there is no obvious stain left on the window surface.
  - Dust, mud spots (including silt and water stains), bird droppings and other stains on the surface of the radar or camera window are recommended to be washed with flowing water or special cleaning agent for windows until the dirt is softened or falls off, and then the surface dirt is wiped clean with dry optical wiping cloth, cotton cloth and flannelette until there is no obvious stain left on the window surface.
  - If there is water stain or natural condensation on the surface of radar or camera window, it is recommended to wipe it with dry optical wiping cloth, cotton cloth and flannelette until there is no obvious water stain on the surface of the window.
  - It is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current scene as soon as possible when the vehicle is running on the unilateral viaduct, tunnel, desert, grassland or snow and other scenes with poor light or easy occlusion. When the occlusion disappears, this kind of occlusion fault will be eliminated without further treatment.
- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
  - When the window is fogged or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the window defogging function to prevent the glass from fogging or frosting.
  - It is recommended to use a mild cleaning agent (such as soapy water) to clean stains on the radar. After cleaning, spray the radar surface with clean water first, and then wipe the radar surface with clean dust-free cloth.
  - Do not carry out operations such as film sticking, waxing, re-spraying with non-original paint, vehicle coat sticking or plating on the external area of the radar, otherwise the radar perception performance will be affected.
  - Do not use the cleaning brush to clean radar or camera to avoid the abrasion of the window and shell caused by the sand mixed in the cleaning brush.
  - Do not use hot water to remove ice and snow from the window to prevent the window from breaking.
  - Do not wipe the window vigorously to avoid damaging the optical coating of the window.
  - Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the window and shell, so as not to damage the surface of the window.
  - When washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water, please try to avoid washing the radar and camera directly.
  - The millimeter-wave radar is installed in the front and rear bumpers respectively. Therefore, in order to avoid affecting the performance of the millimeter-wave radar, please keep the bumper clean. Do not paint, surround, or install metal or alloy (including electroplating process) decorative

parts on the bumper without permission.

Sensor limitations

- Radar and cameras have (but are not limited to) the following limitations:
  - Radar and cameras have blind spots in the detection of the surrounding environment.
  - Radar and cameras can misdetect, such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of an object, or incorrectly detecting an object when there is no object.
  - Radar and cameras may miss detection, such as only partially or completely recognizing certain vehicles, people, animals, or other obstacles.
- Many factors can affect the performance of a sensor, resulting in false or missed detections. Please read the general limitations of the driver assistance system carefully.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement killer, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean optical window and shell.
- If you need to replace the radar or camera, please go to the official authorized 4S shop of BYD for replacement. Do not install or use parts not approved by BYD or make modifications not approved by BYD.
- If the front windshield and bumper need to be replaced, please contact the official authorized 4S shop of BYD to ensure proper disposal of radar and camera.
- If the area where the sensor such as radar and camera is installed is damaged or collided, the sensor may be offset or damaged, and the system may not be available. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- After the sensors such as radar and camera are replaced, they should be calibrated in time according to this manual. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

Driver assistance system calibration

- Driver assistance system calibration, also known as sensor calibration, refers to the use of external equipment by BYD official authorized store staff to connect the vehicle and recalibrate or calibrate the sensor after a certain mileage. At present, the types of sensors and ECU controllers involved in recalibration are camera and radar.

REMINDER

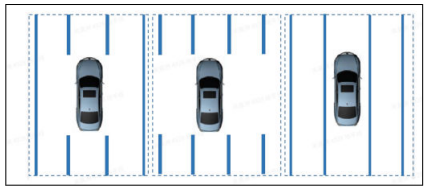
- The "Vehicle Diagnostic System (VDS)" mentioned below can only be operated in the official authorized store of BYD, and shall be operated by the professionally trained personnel of the official authorized store of BYD.

REMINDER

- The calibration of the driver assistance system shall be performed by the professional staff of the official authorized store of BYD. If there is any need for calibration, please contact the official authorized store of BYD directly.

Camera-like calibration method

- The following contents are applicable to camera calibration. When the camera is replaced and the camera bracket is adjusted, it is necessary to go to the official authorized store of BYD to complete the calibration. If the calibration is to be completed, it is necessary to complete the configuration, frame number, DTC (diagnostic trouble code) check and other necessary conditions before completing the external parameter calibration.
- After certain professional guidance or training, BYD official authorized store staff connect the vehicle through Vehicle Diagnostic System (VDS) and actively trigger the camera calibration according to the after-sales calibration guidance manual.
- BYD official authorized store staff drive the vehicle to the road that meets the calibration conditions for calibration, until the effective test results or mileage are reached, the diagnostic equipment shows that the calibration is completed or the progress bar is 100%. After calibration, the driver assistance function can be used normally.
- Road requirements and driving environment selected by the camera:
  - Weather requirements: In sunny days, there is no fog and haze, and the lane line can be clearly seen.
  - Lighting requirements: Camera to be calibrated without direct sunlight
  - Road requirements:
    1. The road is flat and straight, with gentle slope, no obvious ups and downs, and no cross slope.
    2. At least 1km straight road (U-turn at both ends of the road).
    3. Urban road scenes are required to avoid road congestion scenes.
- Recommended lane:
  - In the three-lane scene, the lane is close to the same width, the own lane and the side lane are dotted lines or long solid lines, and driving in the middle lane ensures that the cameras on both sides can observe two lane lines. As shown:



- Driving requirements:
  - The speed is recommended to be maintained at about 35-70km/h.
  - When driving, try to keep straight and avoid frequent turns.
  - When driving, try to keep straight and avoid frequent turns.
- During calibration, the diagnostic equipment will have a progress bar to indicate the current progress. When 100% is displayed, it indicates that the calibration is completed.

Radar-type calibration method

- Radar after-sales calibration refers to millimeter wave radar (front radar/angle radar). When replacement or disassembly, bracket adjustment and so on occur, they need to go back to the official authorized store of BYD to complete the calibration. It is necessary to complete the configuration, frame number, DTC inspection and other necessary conditions before completing the external parameter calibration action.

Calibrate method of millimeter wave radar

- Millimeter wave radar calibration is divided into static calibration or dynamic calibration. After certain professional guidance or training, BYD official authorized store staff connect the vehicle through external diagnostic equipment (VDS) and actively trigger the calibration according to the after-sales calibration guidance manual.
- Static calibration requires BYD's official authorized store to have the corresponding equipment, tooling, target and site conditions. According to the parameter settings in the operation manual of the specific vehicle model, the calibration is actively triggered after the tooling and target are placed.
- Dynamic calibration requires BYD official authorized store staff to receive certain professional guidance or training, connect the vehicle through external diagnostic equipment (VDS), and actively trigger radar calibration according to the after-sales calibration guidance manual.
- BYD official authorized store staff drive the vehicle to the road that meets the calibration conditions for calibration, until the effective test results or mileage are reached, the diagnostic equipment shows that the calibration is completed or the progress bar is 100%. After calibration, the driver assistance function can be used normally.
- The environmental requirements for dynamic driving calibration are as follows:
  - The radar surface shall be clean and free from snow, ice, mud and other coverings.
  - Avoid calibrating in extreme rain or snow.
  - There should be a certain number of stationary metal objects on both sides of the road, such as street lamp posts, road guardrails, road signs, etc. It is recommended to select closed roads with metal railings when conditions permit.
  - The road surface shall be smooth without too many pits or bulges, and the road surface shall not be covered with snow, ice, mud and other road conditions that are easy to cause tire skidding.
- After the dynamic driving calibration is started, the vehicle must be driven under certain conditions to gradually increase the progress bar of dynamic driving calibration to 100% and complete the calibration process. The driving conditions for dynamic driving calibration are as follows:

Constraints	Threshold	Out of tolerance prompt
Minimum vehicle speed	10 km/h	The vehicle speed is too low
Maximum vehicle speed	250 km/h	The Vehicle speed is too high

Minimum longitudinal acceleration	-5.0 m/s^2	Longitudinal acceleration is too small
Maximum longitudinal acceleration	5.0 m/s^2	Excessive longitudinal acceleration
Maximum yaw rate	±0.1 rad/s	Yaw rate is too high
Number of reflection points	NA	Number of reflection points is not satisfied
Other failure conditions	NA	Other failure conditions

- During calibration, the diagnostic equipment will have a progress bar to indicate the current progress. When 100% is displayed, it indicates that the calibration is completed.

Calibration abnormal handling

- If the calibration fails, the VDS diagnostic equipment will prompt the cause of the failure, and calibration can be performed again after the calibration conditions are met again.
- Usually, the vehicle will complete the camera calibration within 10-15 minutes and the radar calibration within 10 minutes. The specific time and mileage should be combined with the actual road environment and driving habits.
- In the process of calibration, if the vehicle speed, road environment or ECU reset and restart are not satisfied, it is necessary to pull over and calibrate again according to the operation manual.
- Because the sensor is damaged and the wiring harness is not firmly connected, it is necessary to return to the official authorized store of BYD for re-inspection and re-calibration.
- Uncalibrated sensors may cause the driver assistance function to fail to work properly. It is recommended to contact the official authorized store of BYD to deal with it.

General Limitations of Driver Assistance Systems

- The driver assistance function uses multi-sensor fusion algorithm, and many factors will affect the performance of the driver assistance function, which will lead to its failure to achieve the desired function. Common limiting factors include but are not limited to the system's own equipment problems (including those caused by driver's misoperation), environmental impacts (weather, road environment, etc.), impacts of surrounding vehicles and other traffic participants, including but not limited to the following factors:

Equipment factors of the system itself (including human use reasons)

- Millimeter-wave radar and camera are not calibrated, damaged, and the surface is covered with foreign matters (such as ice, snow, water, frost, mud, dust and other objects).
- In the environment with strong reflective objects (such as traffic signs on the highway, metal fences, reflective water on the road, etc.).
- In case of the following circumstances, please go to the official authorized store of BYD Automobile to carry out professional calibration and confirmation of the forward-looking camera, including but not limited to:

- Dismantle the front view camera or front windshield washer.
- Four wheels have been re-aligned due to wheel deviation.
- The vehicle sensor is abnormal or the vehicle structure is abnormal due to the occurrence of scratches, collisions, etc. Especially, the bumper, front windshield and frame are deformed or damaged due to vehicle collision or other reasons, resulting in the change of sensor installation position.

- If a coupling is fitted or if a load protrudes from the vehicle's surroundings.
- Disturbance or obstruction caused by an object that is self-mounted to the rear of the vehicle, such as a bicycle rack.
- Obstruction caused by excessive paint (change in paint thickness) or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, clothing, etc.) applied or affixed to the vehicle.
- For vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors, do not install the steering wheel cover, as it may cause abnormal function.
- The system may not always achieve the optimum level of performance under the following circumstances, including but not limited to:
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
  - Tires are not properly inflated or excessively worn.
  - Non-conforming tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
  - When the vehicle is heavily loaded.

Use of environmental impact factors

- If the vehicle runs on special roads such as circular parking lot and tunnel for a long time, the radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be restored after leaving the current special road.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. Under these circumstances, the vehicle will likely slow down unexpectedly or with a delay.
- On roads with sharp curves (such as serpentine roads) or when the curvature of the road curve is too large, the vehicle in front may be lost within a few seconds due to the limitation of the sensor field of view, which may cause the vehicle to accelerate automatically.
- For stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic flow, toll stations, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians, the system may not be able to accurately identify them, and there is a risk of collision, which requires drivers to pay attention to the surrounding situation of vehicles at all times.
- If the vehicle is in a special driving mode such as trailer/snow/mud/sand/mountain, the system function cannot be activated.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the front mmWave radars cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- In extreme weather such as rain, snow, haze and fog, ice and slippery bends.

- Poor visibility of the surrounding environment, such as smoke, splashing water, dust, exhaust emissions from surrounding vehicles, etc.
- The lane line is excessively worn or blocked, covered or disappeared, the old and new markings overlap, and the temporary adjustment or change is rapid due to road construction.
- Strong light (due to oncoming headlamp light or direct sunlight, etc.), dim light (such as dawn, dusk, night).
- An extreme contrast of light, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- Extremely high or low temperatures.
- If a weight limit sign is not standardized and does not meet the size requirements specified by the state, it may be misidentified as a speed limit sign by TSR.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognize the sign completely or clearly.
- Complicated road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, winding paths, narrow roads, off-road roads, rough roads or roads with grooves, pits (such as fire pits), roads with downward steps or cliffs on one side, raised shoulders, super-wide lanes, construction areas (such as areas where cones are arranged) or vehicle access ramps, intersections, gates, etc.
- Poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft road surface (road surface water, ice, snow or mud road, gravel road, sand road, etc.), lane lines or road signs are not clear, damaged, etc.

Impact of surrounding vehicles and other traffic participants

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- The typical profile of pedestrians are indistinguishable from the background.
- Close non-motorized vehicles, including but not limited to two-wheeled vehicles, tricycles, strollers, baby carriages, shopping carts, small animals and pedestrians (especially children).
- Special-shaped vehicles (such as engineering vehicles, large trucks, road maintenance vehicles, vehicles loaded with reinforced concrete pipes and other items outside the vehicle, etc.), rollover vehicles, vehicles with serious abnormal size, etc.
- There are atypical objects with irregular shapes nearby, such as transparent stools, tables and chairs, water horses, ice cream cones and other obstacles that are difficult to be identified by the system.
- A large number of vehicles with a single background color too close to each other.
- The traffic situation is complex, such as encountering vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, small animals or other obstacles that suddenly appear and quickly approach their own vehicles, or vehicles entering and leaving ramps, intersections, toll stations, etc.

WARNING

- The position of the sensor may change or be damaged after the vehicle is scratched or collided (including minor collision). Do not use the auxiliary driving function. You can go to the authorized service agency of BYD Automobile for maintenance.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, please try not to use the auxiliary driving function in bad weather conditions or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety reasons, please do not intentionally test the driving assistance function, such as not taking action in case of emergency, waiting for the driving assistance function to be triggered, etc.
- Please read the instructions of each sub-function carefully to avoid function exit or dangerous situations caused by improper operation. For example, when the automatic emergency braking function is activated, the system will respond to the acceleration request without triggering the emergency braking.
- Due to system limitations, driver assistance systems may generate inappropriate warnings or interventions while monitoring the surrounding environment. The driver assistance system may also give false warnings due to incorrect understanding of the driver's operation, and the driver should always be vigilant.
- Due to the limitation of the system, the auxiliary driving system is unable to accurately detect and respond to emergencies in the surrounding environment at present. The driver should always be vigilant and intervene or control the vehicle (such as deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) in time when necessary to ensure driving safety. Violation of the above

WARNING

operation may cause accidents and even lead to casualties.

Driving Assistance

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Function instructions

- The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system, an extension of traditional cruise control, uses a front mmWave radar and a front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of a vehicle ahead, and controls the speed of the own vehicle according to the following distance and target cruise speed set by the driver, so as to achieve the purpose of adaptive cruise. If the front of the vehicle is clear, the ACC will maintain the set cruising speed and drive forward. If a vehicle is detected in front, the vehicle will adjust its speed according to the following time set by the driver to follow the vehicle in front.

CAUTION

- The driver can activate ACC by pressing the key on the steering wheel. See "ACC activation mode" for details.
- ACC function can only assist the driver in cruise control, but it still requires the driver to actively control the steering wheel to ensure the correct direction of the vehicle.

ACC functional status

- ACC on status: If the ACC activation conditions are met, the driver can activate the ACC function through the button on the steering wheel; if the ACC activation conditions are not

met, the driver tries to activate the ACC function, and the human-machine interface will prompt that the function is not available.

- ACC activation state: The system can drive at a constant speed at the set target cruising speed or actively adjust the distance from the target vehicle in front to stabilize the vehicle-following driving. If the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, ACC ceases to control the vehicle, allowing the vehicle to respond to the driver's acceleration until the driver releases the accelerator pedal.
- ACC fault state: At this time, the ACC function cannot be used. If the driver tries to activate the ACC function, the man-machine interface will prompt that the function is not available.

Functional status	Icon	Display status	Meaning
ACC on status		Light up	ACC is on but not active and has not been active during this power-up cycle
ACC on status		Light up	ACC is on and can be activated and has been activated in this power-up cycle (the icon shows the cruise speed set when it was last activated and exited)
ACC activated:		Light up	The ACC function has been activated (the currently set cruising speed is displayed in the icon)
ACC failure:		Light up	ACC is currently in a fault state and the function cannot be used.

Activate the ACC function

- ACC Activation Conditions
  - EPB does not pull up.
  - The vehicle is in "D" gear.
  - The vehicle does not slide backwards.
  - The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
  - Driver seat belt is fastened.
  - The ESC system is not switched off.
  - The ego vehicle speed is ⩽150km/h.
  - It is activated when the vehicle is stopped (vehicle speed is 0), when the driver presses the brake pedal, or when the automatic parking function is activated.
  - It can be activated when the driver does not press the brake pedal when the vehicle is running (the vehicle speed is greater than 0).

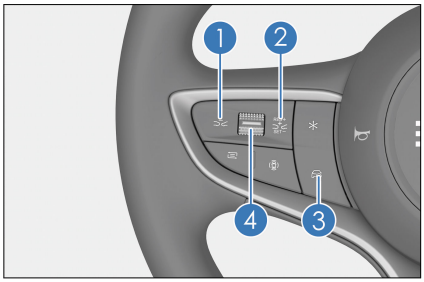
- No vehicle network communication fault prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

CAUTION

- The ACC is suitable for use on highways and roads in good conditions, rather than on complex urban or meandering roads.

ACC activation mode

- During the power-on cycle of the vehicle, when the function is used for the first time, the ACC function can only be activated by pressing key ③. During each power-on cycle of the vehicle, when the ACC is not used for the first time, the ACC function can also be activated by pressing the button ④.



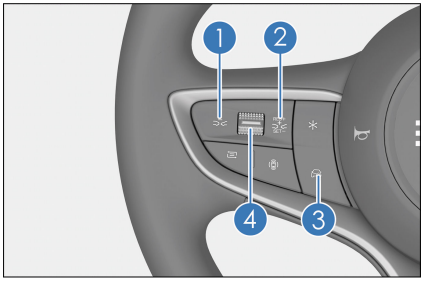
- Activate the ACC function by pressing the key ③, and the system will actively set the current vehicle speed as the target cruising speed (if the current vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, the target cruising speed will be set as 30 km/h); activate the ACC function by pressing the up key ④, and the target cruise speed will be set as the vehicle speed set before the function was exited last time.

WARNING

- ACC cannot actively adjust the driving speed based on road conditions and driving conditions. Drivers should set the target speed according to local traffic laws and regulations and actual road conditions, and adjust it in time when the situation changes, so as to ensure safe driving all the time.

Set target cruise speed

- When the function is activated, the target cruising speed can be set within the range of 30-150km/h by moving the button ④ up or down. When the button ④ is toggled up for a short time, the target cruising speed increases by 5km/h for a single time; when the button ④ is toggled down for a short time, the target cruising speed decreases by 5km/h for a single time; when the button ④ continues to be toggled up for a long time, it increases by 1 km/h continuously; and when the key ④ continues to be toggled down for a long time, it decreases by 1 km/h continuously.



WARNING

- The ACC may not immediately reduce the vehicle speed to the desired value. Do not rely too

WARNING

much on cruise control to reduce the vehicle speed sufficiently.

- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

Set the following time interval

- The driver can reduce or increase the following time interval between the vehicle and the following target by pressing the keys ① and ②. In each gear, the faster the speed, the greater the distance between the vehicle and the vehicle in front.
- ACC shall adjust the response by decreasing and increasing the time interval in the order of gears 1 to 4. The default following distance is the third gear.

Cruise Control (CC) System

- ACC will assist the driver to control the vehicle to cruise at the set speed when the front vehicle is not detected to obstruct the driving of the vehicle.

Cruise with the vehicle

- ACC will assist the driver to control the vehicle to keep a safe distance, follow the vehicle in front, and support the operation of acceleration, deceleration, parking and starting of the vehicle in front.
- When following cruise, the instrument display will show the following vehicle in front. The following distance is related to the vehicle speed, the following time and the gear, and is not a fixed value. (See "Setting the following time")
- In the process of car-following cruise, ACC will assist the driver to adjust the speed and update the car-following target when the car-following target is cut out or other vehicles are cut in. If there is no new car-following target, constant speed cruise will be carried out.

Follow-to-Stop/Start

- ACC can control the vehicle to follow the front vehicle to stop under normal driving conditions (except for tunnels, underground parking lots, urban and rural low-speed scenes);
  - In a short time (⩽ 0.5 minutes) after following and stopping the vehicle in front, the own vehicle can actively follow the vehicle in front and start.
  - In case of long time following and stopping (0.5 minutes <following and stopping time ⩽3 minutes), the driver shall press the accelerator pedal or dial the ACC cruise button ④ to confirm the start.
  - If the following and stopping time is too long (> 3 minutes), the ACC function will actively exit and activate the electronic parking brake. At this time, the driver needs to release the electric parking brake and press the brake pedal to complete the activation of ACC at rest.

WARNING

- Drivers should set the target speed and following time according to local traffic laws and regulations and actual road conditions, and adjust it in time

WARNING

when the situation changes, so as to ensure safe driving all the time.

- ACC cannot handle the oncoming vehicle.
- When the ego vehicle is too close to the vehicle or pedestrian in front, ACC may not be able to correctly identify the target.
- When cruising on a curve, the vehicle may follow the wrong target, causing the vehicle to travel at a speed other than its intended speed or in a direction other than its intended direction of travel. The driver should concentrate on driving and control the vehicle correctly in time when he finds the following error.
- Do not rely too much on the speed adjustment and following time adjustment of the following cruise function to maintain an accurate and safe following distance to avoid collision. It is the driver's responsibility to determine and maintain a safe following distance.
- Pressing the function activation button or releasing the brake pedal after pressing it hard while the vehicle is parked and waiting for driving will cause the vehicle to exit ACC, which may cause the vehicle to move forward suddenly due to idling, thus causing an accident. Please always pay attention to the system prompts and the driving environment. In case of idle driving, please correct and actively control the vehicle in time to ensure safe driving.

WARNING

- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

Exiting ACC

- When the function is activated, if the vehicle is not stationary, the function can be exited by pressing the key ③ or actively pressing the brake pedal; if the vehicle is stationary, the function can only be exited by pressing the key ③.
- If the vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h or the accelerator pedal is continuously pressed for more than 5 minutes, the ACC function will exit.

Avoid overtaking in the slow lane (also applies to ICC function)

- The function of avoiding overtaking in the slow lane is only effective when the ACC function is activated and the speed of the vehicle reaches more than about 90 km/h.
- The driver can set the switch state of the function through the Multimedia System → Settings → ADAS → Driving Assist → Avoiding Overtaking in the Slow Lane, and the default function of the system is off.
- When the function switch is turned on, when the vehicle is running in the slow lane and the speed of the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane is slower than that of the vehicle, the system will actively control the vehicle to reduce the speed

and try to avoid overtaking the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane.

Curve Speed Reduction (also applies to ICC function)

- The curve droop function only works when the ACC function is active.
- The driver can set the switch status of the function through the Multimedia System → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → Curve Speed Reduction, which is off by default.
- After the function is turned on, when the vehicle is about to enter the curve in the ACC activated state, the system will reduce the speed to the appropriate speed in advance according to the curvature of the curve to assist the driver to pass through the curve, so as to improve the driving safety and comfort.

System limitations

- ACC function external sensor
  - The front millimeter-wave radar and camera are installed in the front area of the vehicle, and its field of vision is blocked by the cover, which will interfere with the expected function, especially when the sensor is completely covered, the system will exit. The system will transmit the information of system exit to the driver through the man-machine interface. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the front mmWave radars cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
  - If the vehicle is driven for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.
  - Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.
  - Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
  - Detection may also be affected by noise or electromagnetic waves, resulting in delays or interference.
  - Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. Should this occur, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the ACC vehicle will likely not decelerate as expected or will decelerate late.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for several seconds due to sensor vision limitations, possibly causing the vehicle to accelerate automatically.

WARNING

- ACC can not deal with complex bends such as sharp bends and continuous bends. Drivers still need to observe the road

WARNING

conditions ahead at all times and control the speed or apply brakes in time when necessary.

- The driver should make a comprehensive judgment and adjust the following distance according to the traffic flow ahead and the current environmental conditions around the road, and set the ACC reasonably. After the ACC system is reasonably set, the driver should make sure that the vehicle can be decelerated to stop at any time.
- ACC may not be able to accurately identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic flow, toll stations, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians, and there is a risk of collision, requiring drivers to pay attention to the surrounding conditions of vehicles at all times.
- The ACC system can only achieve limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC does not belong to collision warning or collision avoidance system, and can not replace active safety auxiliary functions such as anti-collision warning and anti-collision braking. It is strongly recommended that drivers always turn on various active safety assistance functions such as anti-collision warning and anti-collision braking (see the chapter on safety Assistance).
- ACC can not deal with all obstacles such as pillars and stone piers. Drivers still need to observe the road conditions ahead at all times and control the speed or apply brakes in time when necessary.
- Do not rely too heavily on the ACC to slow the vehicle sufficiently to avoid a collision. Drivers still need to observe the road ahead at all times, and control the speed or apply brakes in time when necessary.
- When there is a target ahead that may cause a collision risk, the vehicle may not be able to avoid the collision, especially when there is a stationary target ahead or the speed of the vehicle is higher than 80 km/h.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle is in a special driving mode such as trailer/snow/mud/sand/mountain, ACC cannot be activated.
- ACC and its related functions may not work properly or quit when ACC encounters, but is not limited to, the scenarios mentioned below:

  The ego vehicle status problems (including but not limited to improper operation by the driver):

  - The vehicle speed is higher than 155km/h.
  - Any door, front and rear covers of the vehicle are not closed or faulty.

- Abnormal tire pressure of the vehicle.
- The vehicle airbag is abnormal.
- The vehicle is in one of the following states: Gear other than "D", braking, Hill Descent or Hill Start Assist or Traction Control activated, collision, powered off.
- The vehicle chassis, braking system, traction control system and body electronic stability system have failed or need to be repaired.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The driver assistance system is faulty or requires repair.

- External environmental impact (including but not limited to the following weather, visibility, road environment and other factors)
  - Scenes with poor visibility such as night, rain/snow/fog, dust/no street light/dark light/backlighting/glare.
  - Road gap, intersection, narrow road, steep slope.
  - Mountain roads, country roads.
  - Waterlogged, frozen and snow-covered road sections.
  - Sharp bends, serpentine bends, winding mountain roads and other large curvature bends.
  - Mud road, gravel road, cross-country road and other non-paved roads.
  - There are low, static or close obstacles such as road edges.
- Impact of surrounding vehicles and other traffic participants (including but not limited to the following factors)
  - Congested intersection.
  - Pedestrians and cars pass through the intersection at will.
  - Pedestrians, cyclists, animals and so on suddenly rush out of the blind area of vision.
  - The front car braked suddenly.
  - The adjacent cart drives into bike lane.
  - Pedestrians or other vehicles are forced to jam, grab the road, cross obliquely at a large angle or even retrograde.
  - When encountering special-shaped vehicles (large carts, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, vehicles loaded with reinforced concrete pipes and other items outside the vehicle, etc.), stationary vehicles, rollover vehicles, etc.
  - The front vehicle/side front vehicle opens the door or there is an object falling from the vehicle.
- Other issues
  - Including but not limited to: Scenarios mentioned in General Limitations.

WARNING

- The adaptive cruise function is only a driving assistance function, and the precautions only include the common conditions that affect the adaptive cruise function. In addition, there may be other factors that may also affect the performance of the function. Drivers should always pay attention to the surrounding situation and take full responsibility for driving safety.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated when the electronic body stability system is not on.
- The ACC is suitable for use on highways and roads in good conditions, rather than on complex urban or meandering roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. The ACC following time set by the driver shall meet the minimum vehicle distance requirements in the driving environment of the country.
- When ACC is working, if the driver steps on the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, the vehicle will be controlled by the driver. At this time, the driver should pay attention to keeping a safe distance from the vehicle in front.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that brakes or stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- Step on the brake pedal on the slope until the vehicle stops completely. After engaging the "P" gear, the EPB will automatically start. In some cases (the speed of the vehicle in front is too slow relative to the vehicle, the lane change of the vehicle is too fast, or the safety distance between the vehicle in front and the vehicle is too small, etc.), the system may not have enough time to reduce the relative speed, and the system cannot give a warning in time in every case. The driver must react appropriately and in a timely manner in this situation.

CAUTION

- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function does not cover all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.
- If the distance between the vehicle with ACC activated and the adjacent lane is too small (or the vehicle in the adjacent lane is too close to its own lane), it may happen that ACC reacts to the vehicle and brakes.
- If another vehicle changes to the lane on which the vehicle with ACC activated is running and falls within the detection range of the front view camera, it may be recognized as a target vehicle, and a response may be triggered correspondingly. In this event, forced braking or late braking may occur.
- When the ACC cannot identify the vehicle ahead as the target vehicle (no target is highlighted on the instrument), the driver is required to maintain control of the vehicle.
- In rare cases, the system will not be able to identify the rear of the vehicle in front (such as the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or the bumper of a vehicle) when following the vehicle in front to a stop. The system may not guarantee a proper following distance and the driver must be alert and ready to brake at all times.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.

CAUTION

- Do not use the ACC when driving on roads with poor visibility, ramps, and multiple curves, or slippery and wet roads with snow, ice, and water gathered.
- The recognition result of road speed limit by the system is easily affected by the road environment, so the road speed limit value is recognized incorrectly. Users need to keep an eye on the current road speed limit at all times to ensure that the ACC cruise speed meets the requirements of traffic regulations. (Applicable to vehicles with "one-button speed limit" function)
- In case of the following circumstances, please go to the official authorized store of BYD Automobile to carry out professional calibration and confirmation of the forward-looking camera, including but not limited to:
  - Dismantle the front view camera or front windshield washer.
  - Four wheels have been re-aligned due to wheel deviation.
  - A collision happens.
  - It is found that ACC system performance declines or a system error notification is displayed on the cluster.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

Function instructions

- ICC can control the vehicle to drive along the current lane within the speed range of 0-130km/h, which is mainly suitable for road scenes with clear lane lines and good road conditions. When using ICC, the driver needs to control the driving route by himself. When the function is activated, the driver needs to keep the steering wheel at all times and take active control of the vehicle manually if necessary.
- ICC detects the driving environment in front of the vehicle through sensors such as radar and camera, and assists the driver to control the driving direction and speed of the vehicle on this basis, so that the vehicle can keep driving in the current lane on the basis of ACC function.
- The ICC only assists the driver in controlling the vehicle along the current lane and does not assist in controlling the navigation route of the vehicle. When the user uses ICC, the driver needs to hold the steering wheel all the time. The driver should actively control the steering wheel when he needs to adjust the driving route, and pay attention to the instrument screen prompt and sound prompt, so as to be ready to actively control the vehicle at any time, so as to ensure the correct and safe driving of the vehicle. The driver's hands leaving the steering wheel for more than specified time will trigger the driver's motion departure warning.

Activate the ICC

-  The instrument cluster display , which indicates the ICC is activated.
- Operation method:
- The driver can turn on the soft switch setting function of Driving Assist through the Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Driving Assist. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.

- When the ICC activation conditions are met, press key ⑤ to activate the ICC function.
- 

After successful activation, the ICC icon on the instrument display . The target vehicle speed is displayed .

Cruise Assistance

- On the basis of ACC function, ICC assists the driver to control the vehicle, keeps the vehicle running in the central area of the current lane, supports all ACC functions such as constant speed cruise and car-following cruise, and supports all ACC operations such as adjusting target speed and car-following time interval.

WARNING

- Drivers should set the target speed and following time according to local traffic laws and regulations and actual road conditions, and adjust it in time when the situation changes, so as to ensure safe driving all the time.
- ICC can not identify all risk scenarios, drivers still need to observe the road ahead at all times, and control the speed or apply brakes in time when necessary. The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands at all times, observe the road and the surrounding environment, and be ready to take prompt and active control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not rely too heavily on the ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In scenarios such as bends, the vehicle may still press the line

WARNING

or deviate from the central area of the lane, and it is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is on the right course.

- Pressing the steering wheel button ③ or releasing the brake pedal when the vehicle is parked will cause the vehicle to exit the ICC, which may cause the vehicle to move forward suddenly due to idling, thus causing an accident. Please always pay attention to the system prompts and the driving environment. In case of idle driving, please correct and actively control the vehicle in time to ensure safe driving.
- Drivers should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around them, and take the initiative to control the vehicle manually in time when necessary to ensure safe driving.

driver's motion departure warning

- During ICC activation, the driver's continuous hands off the steering wheel will trigger the driver's motion off reminder;
- After the driver's movement is triggered from the three-level reminder, the vehicle will actively exit the ICC, slow down to brake in the lane, and light up the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions can interrupt the active parking behavior of this lane (the vehicle type needs to confirm the interruptible conditions):
  - Turn off the double flash or turn on the left and right turn signals;

- The driver steps on the accelerator pedal and turns the steering wheel at the same time;
- The driver cancels the function through the steering wheel button/ paddle;
- The gear is switched to "P" gear.
- In a single power-up cycle, the ICC function will be disabled after three times of triggering the driver motion out of the level 3 alarm, and the function can be activated normally after the power-up and power-down again.

ICC icon meaning

Icon	Display status	Meaning
	Light up	ACC is on but not active
	Light up	ICC is active and in up
	Light up	ICC cannot be used

WARNING

- When the ICC function is activated, the vehicle may not be able to stabilize immediately. Drivers should hold the steering wheel all the way to ensure that the vehicle runs safely in the current lane, pay close attention to the driving situation of the vehicle, and intervene or control manually in time when necessary.
- When activating the ICC function, the driver should ensure the safety of the vehicle perimeter and avoid over-reliance on the system.
- Drivers should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around them, and take the initiative to control the vehicle manually in time when necessary to ensure safe driving.

WARNING

- ICC will be affected by weather, illumination and the clarity of lane lines. Under the conditions of backlight, sunset, road surface covered by ice and snow, and serious wear of lane lines, the performance will be significantly reduced. Please use ICC with caution at this time.
- Do not use the ICC system on winding roads with sharp turns, icy and slippery bends, or under weather conditions, such as dense fog, heavy rain and heavy snow, liable to hinder the sensing operation of front view camera.
- The recognition result of the system for the road speed limit is easily affected by the real-time of the map, the vehicle network and the road environment, so that the recognition of the road speed limit value is wrong, and

WARNING

the user needs to keep paying attention to the current road speed limit at all times to ensure that the ICC cruising speed meets the requirements of traffic regulations. (Only applicable to vehicles with one-button speed limit setting function)

REMINDER

- Do not attempt to activate the ICC until the vehicle has stabilized (the steering wheel is aligned, the front of the vehicle is aligned, the vehicle is in the center of the lane, and the vehicle has not made a sharp turn).
- ICC activation may fail when the vehicle is driving at an intersection. Users can drive through the intersection and enter the stable lane before trying to activate the ICC function.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

Function instructions

- When the speed limit value identified by the traffic sign recognition system is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed value set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to control the target cruise speed according to the speed limit value. When the user presses the "SET-" button, the target cruise speed control will be performed according to the speed limit value.
- When the system identifies road signs such as roundabouts and intersections, it will prompt whether to adjust the ACC target cruise speed.

Function settings

To enable or disable ISLC, go to Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → TSR → ISLC.

- The ISLC function is off by default.
- The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
- When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
- With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

REMINDER

- Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) function is a combination of the adaptive cruise function and the traffic sign recognition function, and the instructions for use of the adaptive cruise function and the traffic sign recognition function shall be strictly followed.

Safety Assistance

Forward Safety Assistance

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

- The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) function uses sensors such as front-facing millimeter wave radar or camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and riders in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the vehicle, pedestrian or rider in front of the vehicle, it will send an audible and visual alarm to remind the driver to take necessary measures to mitigate or avoid the risk of collision.

Function instructions

The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) function is divided into the following three sub-functions:

- Safe distance warning: When the vehicle is running at a speed of about 65 km/h ~ 150 km/h, the system detects the driving environment in front of the vehicle in real time, and when it is recognized that the vehicle has been following the vehicle in front for a long time, it sends out a safe distance alarm to remind the driver that the distance between the vehicle and the front vehicle is too close.
- When the safe distance alarm is given, the instrument prompts the driver of the risk by turning on the indicator light and prompting "Please keep a safe distance".
- Pre-warning: When the vehicle is running at a speed of about 15 km/h ~ 150 km/h, the system will give a pre-alarm when it determines that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the target in front. The driver must take prompt and appropriate actions to ensure a safe driving distance.
- In case of pre-alarm, it will be prompted visually and audibly, the instrument indicator light will be on, the buzzer will alarm, and the instrument will prompt in classical Chinese.
- In case of emergency alarm: When the vehicle is running at a speed of about 15 km/h ~ 150 km/h, the driver does not take appropriate actions in time after the pre-alarm, the collision risk is aggravated, and the system will give an emergency alarm. The driver must take prompt and appropriate actions to ensure a safe driving distance.
- In case of emergency alarm, it will be prompted by means of hearing, vision and touch. The instrument indicator light will be on, the buzzer will give an alarm, and the classical Chinese will prompt "please brake", which may be accompanied by a short brake reminder.

WARNING

- FCW is only a driving assistance function, which may be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, perception accuracy, target type, position relationship with the target, system delay, etc. It may not be able to send a warning in time or miss to trigger a warning, or the system may trigger a warning by mistake due to misrecognition. The FCW function cannot replace the driver's judgment and operation.

Function settings

- The driver can set the FCW parameters through the Multimedia System → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- Values and meanings of FCW parameters are as follows:
  - Disable: Forward Collision Warning (FCW)
  - Later: Enable the FCW, and the warning time is late.
  - Moderate: Enable the FCW, and the warning time is moderate.
  - Earlier: Enable the FCW, and the warning time is early.

REMINDER

- The FCW parameter defaults to Moderate.
- If the FCW switch is turned off during this trip. When the vehicle is restarted, the forward collision alert is turned back on and the parameter is set to the default value of "Moderate".

System limitations

- Forward collision reminders may not be issued for the following objectives, including but not limited to:
  - A vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist coming head-on from another vehicle;
  - A vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist that cuts obliquely into the path of its own vehicle;
  - Vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists travelling in adjacent lanes;
  - All kinds of animals;
  - All kinds of special-shaped vehicles, such as sprinklers, vans, road construction vehicles and so on.
- Forward collision warning may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions, such as rain, snow and fog;
  - Poor lighting conditions, such as night, glare, direct sunlight and other environments;
  - The sensors are dirty, fogged, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood and tailgate are not closed properly or they are opened during driving;
  - The driver does not wear the seat belt or unfasten the seat belt during driving.
  - The driver steps on the brake;
  - The driver presses the accelerator sharply.
  - The driver frequently switches between the accelerator pedal and brake pedal during driving.
  - When the electronic body stability system is off or the fault lamp is on;
  - Driver modification, such as repainting, causing the body paint to be too thick, sticking film or tape, decoration, etc., affecting the performance of the camera or millimeter wave radar;
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond properly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles are entering the sensor detection range fast.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - The typical profile of pedestrians are indistinguishable from the background.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle travels on a curve with a small turning radius.
  - In some environments, the detection may be affected or delayed. For example, when the radar cross section of the target is too small (it may be a bicycle, tricycle, carriage, pedestrian, electric bicycle, motorcycle or special-shaped vehicle, etc.), there is a risk that the system cannot confirm the distance to the target in front, and the response to such target may be delayed or unable to respond;

- Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.
- Detection may also be affected by noise or electromagnetic waves, resulting in delays or interference;

- The FCW may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle is driven for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may be temporarily limited in function due to its detection characteristics, and its function will be restored after leaving the current special road.

WARNING

- Drivers must drive safely and observe the surrounding traffic conditions at all times. In any case, FCW should not be used to replace the normal driver's judgment and operation.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle is closely followed for a long time, the safe distance alarm will give a distance warning. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- The pedestrian protection scenario cannot overcome the limitations of some physical conditions, and the function may not be fully implemented within the speed range specified

WARNING

by the system. Therefore, the responsibility for taking timely and effective braking action always lies in the driver. Whether the pedestrian protection scenario is braked or not needs to be based on the actual situation.

- Pedestrian protection scenarios cannot rely on the system itself to completely avoid accidents and serious injuries.
- Pedestrian protection scenarios may trigger unwanted reminders in some complex conditions, for example, on curved main roads.
- In the event of a functional failure, there may be an unwanted alarm intervention, for example, due to a radar/forward-looking camera angle misalignment.
- Do not attempt to test the FCW system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the Millimeter wave radar in case of any of the following situations:
  - Dismantle the front view camera.
  - The toe-in or rear axle wheel camber has been adjusted during four-wheel alignment.
  - A collision happens.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.

WARNING

- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- The FCW function does not guarantee a warning in all cases, and in complex traffic situations, the system cannot always clearly identify vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- In this case, the instrument cluster display shows corresponding information (dirty surface or foreign matter covering causes blindness of the sensor); then, foreign matters on the sensor surface shall be removed as required. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the forward collision warning function are turned off. After clearing, the forward collision warning function are normal.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

Function instructions

- Automatic emergency braking (AEB) uses sensors such as front millimeter wave radar and camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that there is a serious risk of collision between the vehicle and the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front of the vehicle, it will automatically apply the necessary emergency braking to assist the driver to avoid or mitigate the collision.
- When the vehicle is running at a speed of about 4 km/h to 150 km/h, the automatic emergency braking (AEB) system detects the driving environment in front of the vehicle in real time, and automatically brakes to reduce the speed of the vehicle when it is recognized that the vehicle is about to collide with the vehicle, pedestrian or rider in front.
- In case of emergency braking, the instrument displays the brake icon, displays the pop-up window animation, and displays "emergency braking" in classical Chinese, accompanied by a sound alarm.

WARNING

- The AEB is a driver assistance function, which is not designed to avoid collision, but only to assist the driver to avoid or mitigate collision.
- Braking will be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, perception accuracy, target type, position relationship with the target, system delay, braking system performance, tire status and so on. It may also cause the system to trigger the brake by mistake due to misrecognition. The AEB function cannot replace the driver's judgment and operation.

Function settings

Users can activate or deactivate the AEB through the Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

WARNING

- The driver is strongly advised not to turn off the automatic emergency braking function. If the automatic emergency braking function is turned off, the vehicle will not be able to help the driver reduce the speed of the vehicle,

WARNING

and will not be able to assist the driver to avoid or mitigate the collision as far as possible.

REMINDER

- The AEB function is on by default.
- Turning off the "AEB" switch is only effective for this trip. When the vehicle is restarted, the AEB is turned on again.

System limitations

- The AEB can only be activated when the driving speed is greater than 4 km/h. This function is designed to reduce the possible risk of collision and does not mean that the collision can be avoided at all speeds. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under any working condition. Please drive carefully.
- Automatic emergency braking may not apply for the following purposes, including but not limited to:
  - A vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist coming head-on from another vehicle;
  - A vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist that cuts obliquely into the path of its own vehicle;
  - Vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists travelling in adjacent lanes;
  - All kinds of animals;
  - All kinds of special-shaped vehicles, such as sprinklers, vans, road construction vehicles and so on.
- Automatic emergency braking may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions, such as rain, snow and fog;
  - Poor lighting conditions, such as night, glare, direct sunlight and other environments;
  - Poor road conditions, such as pits, bumps, wet and slippery, too large ramp angle, etc.;
  - The sensors are dirty, fogged, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood and tailgate are not closed properly or they are opened during driving;
  - The driver does not wear the seat belt or unfasten the seat belt.
  - The driver presses the accelerator sharply.
  - The driver frequently switches between the accelerator pedal and brake pedal during driving.
  - When the electronic body stability system is off or the fault lamp is on;
  - Driver modification, such as repainting, causing the body paint to be too thick, sticking film or tape, decoration, etc., affecting the performance of the camera or millimeter wave radar;
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.
- In complex traffic situations, automatic emergency braking may not respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians or vehicles are entering the sensor detection range fast.
- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- The typical profile of pedestrians are indistinguishable from the background.
- Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
- The vehicle travels on a curve with a small turning radius.
- In some environments, the detection may be affected or delayed. For example, when the radar cross section of the target is too small (it may be a bicycle, tricycle, carriage, pedestrian, electric bicycle, motorcycle or special-shaped vehicle, etc.), there is a risk that the system cannot confirm the distance to the target in front, and the response to such target may be delayed or unable to respond;
- Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.
- Detection may also be affected by noise or electromagnetic waves, resulting in delays or interference;

- The system may not always achieve the optimum level of performance under the following circumstances, including but not limited to:
  - The front bumper is strongly impacted due to an accident or other reasons.
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
  - Tires are not properly inflated or excessively worn.
  - Non-conforming tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
  - When the vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - The vehicle is in the running-in period.
- The AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs.
- If the vehicle is driven for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may be temporarily limited in function due to its detection characteristics, and its function will be restored after leaving the current special road.
- When the vehicle is in special driving modes such as driving with trailer, snow, mud, sand and mountain, the automatic emergency braking cannot be activated.
- The AEB is not activated frequently, and the system may not trigger automatic emergency braking again for tens of seconds after the previous activation of automatic emergency braking.

WARNING

- Drivers must drive safely and observe the surrounding traffic conditions at all times. In any case, automatic emergency braking should not be used to replace the normal driver's judgment and operation.
- The pedestrian protection scenario cannot overcome the limitations of some physical conditions, and the function may not be fully implemented

WARNING

within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility for taking timely and effective braking action always lies in the driver. Whether the pedestrian protection scenario is braked or not needs to be based on the actual situation.

- Pedestrian protection scenarios cannot rely on the system itself to completely avoid accidents and serious injuries.
- Pedestrian protection scenarios may trigger unwanted braking in some complex conditions, for example, on curved main roads.
- In the event of a functional failure, there may be unwanted braking intervention, e.g. due to radar/forward view camera angle misalignment.
- Do not attempt to test the AEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the Millimeter wave radar in case of any of the following situations:
  - Dismantle the front view camera.
  - The toe-in or rear axle wheel camber has been adjusted during four-wheel alignment.
  - A collision happens.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.

WARNING

- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*

- Traffic sign recognition (TSR)obtains road speed limit information through cameras or navigation maps, and the instrument lights up the speed limit indication icon to prompt the driver to control the speed within a reasonable range.

Function instructions

- TSR Contains three sub-functions: SLIF, RSI, ISA.
- Speed Limit Information Function (SLIF) The road speed limit information is obtained through the camera or map, and the instrument lights up the speed limit indication icon.
- Road Sign Identification (RSI) The road sign information is obtained through the camera or map, and the instrument lights up the road sign indication icon for auxiliary prompt.
- Intelligent Speed Limit Alert (ISA): When the speed displayed on the instrument is greater than speed limit recognized by the system, the instrument speed limit icon will remind or sound alarm to remind the driver not to exceed the speed limit.

Function settings

- Set path: Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → Traffic Sign Recognition to set the enable/disable status of the traffic sign recognition function and its sub-functions.
- The Traffic sign recognition (TSR) function is turned on by factory default.

- The TSR function is disabled: No traffic sign recognition function and its sub-functions are enabled.
- The TSR function is enabled: Speed limit sign recognition (SLIF) and road sign recognition (RSI) are turned on; speed limit alert (ISA) can be turned on/off freely.
- Sound prompt of speed limit change: Turn on/off the audible prompt accompanying the change of the speed limit sign.
- Intelligent Speed Limit Alert (ISA): Enable/disable the icon/audible indication when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign value.
  - Speed Limit Warning (SLW): Enable/disable the icon/audible indication when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign value.

REMINDER

- Map data will be updated regularly to ensure system performance.
- Traffic sign recognition can only complete the recognition of speed limit signs, but not other traffic signs. It does not participate in the active control of vehicles. The control of vehicles is always in the hands of drivers. Please drive safely.
- The field of view of the front view camera shall not be blocked by objects or interfered with by strong light. Transient obstruction of vision and bright light disturbance can temporarily deactivate the function, which can recover on its own when the field of vision becomes normal. If it fails to resume on its own, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- When the traffic sign function fails, the TSR function is not available. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

System limitations

- The TSR is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, roads.
- The detection of the TSR system for the speed limit sign is easily interfered by the environment. Under the following circumstances, the system may not work or its performance may be significantly reduced, including but not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty and foggy or there is an obstruction in front of the front view camera.
  - There are sudden changes in ambient brightness, for example when entering/exiting tunnels.
  - The road speed limit signs are not clear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partially blocked or covered;
  - The visibility is poor in snowy, rainy and foggy days.
  - The weight limit and width limit marks are not standardized and do not meet the size requirements specified by the state;
  - Because the map speed limit data is limited by timeliness, it may lead to speed limit errors obtained by the recognition system, such as road construction, speed limit change of speed limit plate, road addition/cancellation of speed limit plate, etc.;

- Vehicle positioning is not accurate, such as multi-storey elevated roads, parallel main and auxiliary roads and other complex road conditions.

- The proper functioning of the system may be influenced by broken windshields in the view of the front view camera, tinting of the vehicle's front windshield, the addition of non-compliant coatings, the placement of light-reflecting objects on the dashboard panel, and any additional objects that interfere with the view of the camera.

WARNING

- Do not rely too much on the traffic sign recognition function, which can only send out the warning information of vehicle speeding, but can not assist in controlling the speed of the vehicle.
- The TSR function is only a driving assistance function. Limitations and precautions only include common situations that affect the traffic sign recognition function. Many factors may affect the function performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must always take responsibility for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include but are not limited to:
  - Unclear speed limit signs;
  - There are missing speed limit signs.

CAUTION

- Situations that may cause recognition difficulty or late function activation of the front view camera include, but are not limited to:
  - The front view camera comes off, is loosely installed or blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- In the following scenarios, the Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) function may not work, not work properly, or quit:
  - The driving assistance system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).
  - Scenarios mentioned in the general limitations of driver assistance systems.
  - The driver assistance system is faulty or requires repair.

Lateral Safety Assistance

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the current lane, the driver is reminded or assisted to return the vehicle to the current lane.

Function instructions

- Lane Departure Assist (LDA)consists of: Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Lane Departure Prevention (LDP). The operating speed range of the system is 65-150km/h.

- Lane Departure Warning (LDW): When the driver has no steering input (turning the steering wheel vigorously, turning the steering lamp) and the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the current lane, the driver can use the camera and other sensors to identify the lane line on the road and detect the position of the vehicle in the lane. The system triggers the lane departure alarm to remind the driver through instrument prompt (the lane line on the departure side is displayed in red), tactile (steering wheel vibration) or audible alarm (applicable to overseas models) to help avoid or mitigate the risk of lane departure.
- Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) When the driver has no steering input (turning the steering wheel vigorously, turning the steering lamp) and the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the current lane, the system prompts through the instrument (the deviating side lane line is displayed in red), and controls the steering wheel to correct the vehicle's driving path. Prevent the vehicle from deviating from the current lane and assist in avoiding or mitigating the risk of lane departure.

Function settings

Set path: Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → Lane Departure Assist.

- The LDA function is all "Enable" by default, and the subsequent power-on and power-off system defaults to the previous setting state.
- Lane departure assist warning mode, factory default vibration, selectable "sound"/ "sound + vibration", subsequent memory.
- Lane departure sensitivity: The factory default is moderate; after the sensitivity is adjusted to "high", it can be restored to "moderate" by re-powering on and off;
- Disable: No traffic sign recognition function and its sub-functions are enabled.
- Reminder: Only the lane departure warning function is turned on, and it will not assist in turning the steering wheel.
- Deviation correction: Only turn on the lane departure suppression function and turn the steering wheel to correct the deviation of the vehicle.
- Fully enabled: Turn on lane departure warning and lane departure suppression at the same time.
- After the vehicle is powered off, the default settings are restored when the vehicle is restarted.

REMINDER

- Lane departure assist is inhibited if the driver turns on the turn signal and changes lanes in the direction of the turn signal.
- The Lane Departure Assist function will be inhibited if the driver continues to drive on the line.
- If the driver presses down hard on the brake pedal, accelerator pedal, or turns the steering wheel while the lane departure suppression function is active, the function is disabled.
- The Lane Departure Assist function will be inhibited if any of the vehicle's doors or front and rear lids are not closed or a breakdown occurs.
- The field of view of the camera shall not be blocked by objects or disturbed by strong light.The view of the camera shall not be blocked by objects or interfered

REMINDER

with by strong light. Transient obstruction of vision and bright light disturbance can temporarily deactivate the function, which can recover on its own when the field of vision becomes normal. If it fails to resume on its own, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- During the activation of the LDP function, the driver's hands must not leave the steering wheel, otherwise the system will prompt the driver to control the steering wheel of the vehicle by voice. After the LDP is activated, the system accumulates the number of LDP correction activations in a rolling cycle of 180 seconds without driver intervention; there is no audible alarm within 5 seconds of the first LDP activation, and the second LDP activation reminds the driver to control the vehicle through audible alarm; the third and subsequent LDP activations accumulate more than 10 seconds of alarm time compared with the previous one.
- In case of LDW and LDP function failure, the instrument will display icons and sound prompts, accompanied by text reminders. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The detection of lane line by the LDA system is easily interfered by the environment. Under the following circumstances, the system may not work or its performance may be significantly reduced, including but not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty and foggy or there is an obstruction in front of the front view camera.
  - Glare is caused by direct sunlight, reflections from accumulated water on the road surface, incoming vehicles on the opposite lane, etc.
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight in sunny days.
  - The visibility is poor in snowy, rainy and foggy days.
  - Confusion of lane lines, such as overlap of old and new markings or temporary adjustment of lane lines due to road construction.
  - A rapid change in lane alignment, such as a lane branching, crossing, or merging.
  - Lane lines are indistinct, thin, worn, blurred, or covered with dirt/snow.
  - The lane is too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, the markings are changed for a short time, such as ramps or highway exits, or the lane lines are complex.
  - Driving on a steep slope or sharp curve, the distance between the vehicle and the front vehicle is too close or the front vehicle blocks the lane marking.
- The system may not be able to correct the deviation in time due to wet and slippery roads, excessive lateral deviation speed of the vehicle, etc., for example:

- Poor road condition, such as wet and slippery road surface after sprinkler operation or rain and snow.
- The lateral deviation speed of the vehicle is too large or too small.
- Other conditions that affect or reduce the steering performance of the vehicle.

- The proper functioning of the system may be influenced by broken windshields in the view of the front view camera, tinting of the vehicle's front windshield, the addition of non-compliant coatings, the placement of light-reflecting objects on the dashboard panel, and any additional objects that interfere with the view of the camera.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, do not test Lane Departure Assist (LDA) function on your own.
- Do not rely too much on the lane departure assistance function. The lane departure warning function can only send out the warning information of lane departure, but cannot assist in controlling the driving direction of the vehicle.
- LDA is only a driver assistance function. Limitations and precautions only include common situations that affect Lane Departure Assist. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. The driver shall always observe the surrounding conditions and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when the function is inhibited or exited. The driver must always take responsibility for driving safety.

WARNING

- Please decide whether to use the lane departure alert according to personal needs, traffic conditions and road environment.

CAUTION

- It is recommended to turn LDA off when driving in any of the following conditions:
  - Driving in a sporty style;
  - Severe weather conditions;
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may cause recognition difficulty or late function activation of the camera include, but are not limited to:
  - The position of the camera is loose, falling off or blocked;
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The front view camera is partially or completely blocked.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as driving with trailer, snow, mud, sand and mountain.
- In the following scenarios, the Lane Departure Assist (LDA) function may not work, not work properly, or quit:

CAUTION

- The driving assistance system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).
- Scenarios mentioned in the general limitations of driver assistance systems.
- The driver assistance system is faulty or requires repair.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

- When the vehicle unconsciously deviates from the current road surface or unconsciously deviates from the lane and there is a risk of collision with the vehicle behind the adjacent lane in the same direction or the vehicle coming from the opposite lane, the steering wheel is assisted to correct the deviation so as to avoid and reduce the possible risk of collision.

Function instructions

- **Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA):** Sensors such as cameras are used to detect the road boundaries and lane lines ahead, and angular millimeter wave radar is used to detect vehicles in adjacent lanes. If the system recognizes that the driver unconsciously deviates from the road or judges that there is a risk of deviation and collision between the vehicle and the target vehicle, it will assist in controlling the steering wheel to correct the deviation, so as to control the vehicle to keep driving in the current lane. O as to avoid or reduce the risk that the vehicle unintentionally crosses the road boundary or collides with an oncoming vehicle in the opposite direction or an overtaking vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- ELKA works within the speed of:
- Scenes of vehicle coming from the rear: 50km/h-150km/h.
- Opposite oncoming vehicle scenario: 60km/h-150km/h.
- Curb scene: 65km/h-150km/h

Function settings

Set path: Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist → Emergency Lane Keeping Assist.

- The ELKA function is turned on by factory default. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
- **Disable**: Do not turn on the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist.
- **Enable**: Enable the ELKA funtion.

REMINDER

- If the driver presses down hard on the brake pedal, accelerator pedal, or turns the steering wheel while the ELKA function is active, the function is disabled.
- If the driver turns on the turn signal and changes lanes in the direction of the turn signal, the adjacent vehicle approach avoidance function will be inhibited in the "Departure to the Edge of the Road" scenario and the "Departure to the Opposite Lane with an Opposite Vehicle" scenario.
- If the driver continues to press the line or the edge of the road, the adjacent vehicle approach avoidance function will be inhibited.

REMINDER

- If there is a risk of deviation from the road or side collision, but the vehicle may collide with other obstacles on the path after correction, the adjacent vehicle approach avoidance function will not interfere with the direction of the vehicle.
- The field of view of the front view camera shall not be blocked by objects or interfered with by strong light. Transient obstruction of vision and bright light disturbance can temporarily deactivate the function, which can recover on its own when the field of vision becomes normal. If it fails to resume on its own, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- When the icon is always on, the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) function is not available. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- The detection of lane lines, road edges or obstacles by the ELKA system is easily interfered by the environment, and the system may not work, not work properly or its performance may be significantly reduced, including but not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty and foggy or there is an obstruction in front of the front view camera.
  - Glare is caused by direct sunlight, reflections from accumulated water on the road surface, incoming vehicles on the opposite lane, etc.
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight in sunny days.
  - The boundary lines between the road and the side grass, soil or curb, etc. are unidentifiable.
  - The visibility is poor in snowy, rainy and foggy days.
  - Confusion of lane lines, such as overlap of old and new markings or temporary adjustment of lane lines due to road construction.
  - A rapid change in lane alignment, such as a lane branching, crossing, or merging.
  - Lane lines are indistinct, thin, worn, blurred, or covered with dirt/snow.
  - The lane is too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, the markings are changed for a short time, such as ramps or highway exits, or the lane lines are complex.
  - Driving on a steep slope or sharp curve, the distance between the vehicle and the front vehicle is too close or the front vehicle blocks the lane marking.
- The system may be missed, misdetected or not detected in time due to various factors such as the type, location, occurrence time and occlusion of obstacles, resulting in the system not working in time, for example:
  - There is a large vehicle in front of the ego vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radar or camera of the vehicle.

- Other obstacles move quickly or at close range to the front or side of the vehicle.
- From the front/rear side of the ego vehicle, there are barriers, water horses, cone barrels and other obstacles that may be missed by the system.
- The front/rear side of the ego vehicle is blocked, for example, there are obstacles such as vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, etc. That block the detection area of the radar or camera of the vehicle.
- There is an obstacle in front of/behind the side of the ego vehicle that does not have a strong contrast with the light of the front sight environment.
- There is a target in front of/behind the side of the ego vehicle that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- The target is in the curve from the front/rear of the ego vehicle side.
- Other situations beyond the detection conditions and range of the radar or camera of the vehicle.

- The system may not be able to correct the deviation in time due to wet and slippery roads, excessive lateral deviation speed of the vehicle, etc., for example:
  - Poor road condition, such as wet and slippery road surface after sprinkler operation or rain and snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed of the vehicle is too large or too small.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the steering performance of the vehicle.
- The proper functioning of the system may be influenced by broken windshields in the view of the front view camera, tinting of the vehicle's front windshield, the addition of non-compliant coatings, the placement of light-reflecting objects on the dashboard panel, and any additional objects that interfere with the view of the camera.

WARNING

- For the sake of the driver's driving safety, please do not test the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) function by yourself.
- The ELKA function will only assist in correcting the vehicle to return to the original lane when there is a risk of collision when the vehicle deviates from the road or deviates from the lane. It is impossible for the driver assistant to control the vehicle to keep driving in the central area of the lane. Do not rely too much on the ELKA function to avoid side collision.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance function. Limitations and precautions only include common situations that affect ELKA. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must always take responsibility for driving safety.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include but are not limited to:

CAUTION

- Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles
- Unclear or incomplete lane lines

- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:
  - The view camera comes off, is loosely installed or blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The camera lens is partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radars come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as driving with trailer, snow, mud, sand and mountain.
- In the following scenarios, the Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) function may not work, not work properly, or quit:
  - The ego vehicle is at the intersection.
  - The driving assistance system is in the process of starting

CAUTION

(for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).

- Scenarios mentioned in the general limitations of driver assistance systems.
- The driver assistance system is faulty or requires repair.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- When the target in the driver's visual blind area is detected, the risk warning prompt is sent out to remind the driver to pay attention to safe driving. This function is enabled by default.

Function instructions

- The Blind Spot Detection (BSD) function uses sensors such as radar to detect targets (vehicles, riders) in the driver's blind spot on the side of the vehicle. When the vehicle runs at a speed of about 15km/h ~ 150km/h, the blind area monitoring system will light the alarm lamp on the outside rearview mirror on the target side when it detects that there is a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the steering lamp lever at this time, the alarm lamp (the alarm lamp on the outside rearview mirror at the target side) will flash, the instrument icon will light up and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash to remind the driver of the danger of collision.

REMINDER

- Do not paste any object on the exterior rearview mirror lens, so as not to affect the normal use

REMINDER

of the blind area monitoring function.

- The driver must make sure that BSD is operating normally and keep the position for installing the radar sensors in good condition. Any areas covered in mud, snow, or other obstructions should be cleaned as quickly as possible.
- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- The calibration of radar sensors may be affected by vibration or collision, resulting in compromised BSD performance. Should this occur, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider

Function Settings

- Users can activate or deactivate the BSD through the Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- This switch is on by default.

System limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- Blind spot monitoring and its related functions may not work properly or quit when encountering (including but not limited to) the following scenarios:
  - Poor visibility, such as rain, snow, fog and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - The vehicle is driving in a sharp turning section.
  - The speed of the vehicle is less than 15km/h.
  - The ego vehicle is overtaking the vehicle in front or meeting the vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
- Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
- The system has failed or requires service.
- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light and reflection, the system may misdetect, for example, the system may misdetect rails, gantries, height limit poles or traffic signs, reflective ground spikes, etc. As obstacles, and then trigger reminders.

WARNING

- When the blind area monitoring system issues a warning, the driver should avoid changing lanes to the warning side lane. Drivers should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.
- BSD can not replace the role of internal and external rearview mirrors.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

Door Opening Warning (DOW)

- When the collision risk of opening the door is detected, an early warning is issued to remind the driver to pay attention to the collision risk and improve the safety. This function is enabled by default.

Function instructions

- The DOW function detects targets (vehicles, riders) on the left and right sides of the vehicle through sensors such as radar. When the vehicle is stationary in the power-on state or runs slowly at a speed not higher than 2km/h, the door opening safety warning system will light the warning lamp on the outside rearview mirror at the target side when it detects that there is a risk of collision when opening the door, and the warning lamp will remain on until the door opening safety warning is lifted to remind the driver to pay attention to the risk; If the driver opens the corresponding door at this time, the warning lamp of the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side flashes, accompanied by a warning tone, reminding the driver to pay attention to the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not paste any object on the exterior rearview mirror lens, so as not to affect the normal use of the DOW function.
- Rear lateral collision braking may fail or not be timely due to several factors such as weather and road environment.
- DOW will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- The calibration of the side auxiliary radar sensor of the DOW

REMINDER

may be affected by vibration or collision, which will degrade the system performance. Should this occur, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider

Function Settings

- Users can activate or deactivate the DOW through the Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- This switch is on by default.

System limitations

- The DOW is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The door opening safety reminder and its related functions may not work properly or quit when encountering (including but not limited to) the following scenarios:
  - Poor visibility, such as rain, snow, fog and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - The ego vehicle stops at the turning point or beside the wall.
  - There is a large vehicle in rear of the ego vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radar.
  - There are small targets or slow moving targets.
  - The target speed is too fast or there is turning behavior, for example, the target vehicle changes lanes to the rear of the vehicle, and other vehicles suddenly change lanes behind the vehicle in the detection area.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).

- Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
- The system has failed or requires service.
- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light and reflection, the system may misdetect, for example, the system may misdetect rails, gantries, height limit poles or traffic signs, reflective ground spikes, etc. As obstacles, and then trigger reminders.

WARNING

- The DOW cannot detect objects behind it through other vehicles or obstacles.
- The DOW cannot replace the function of internal and external rearview mirrors, and cannot replace the visual inspection of drivers and passengers. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off is the most effective measure and responsibility for drivers and passengers to ensure personal safety.
- The DOW may give an early warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and keep an eye on traffic so you can anticipate if anything needs to be done.
- The DOW can only prompt the collision risk through early warning, and can not avoid the collision accident.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above

WARNING

operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

Rear Safety Assistance

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

- When the vehicle is moving forward, it will give a warning when it is detected that the vehicle may be rear-ended by the rear vehicle. This function is enabled by default.

Function instructions

- When the vehicle is moving at a speed below about 150 km/h, the RCW system detects the driving environment behind the vehicle in real time through sensors such as radar, and sends out a warning when it recognizes that the rear vehicle may collide with its own vehicle (i. e. rear-end collision).
- When reminding, the interior atmosphere lights and the front left and right atmosphere lights (corresponding direction) are always on, and the red area at the rear of the instrument is highlighted. In addition to warning the driver through the instrument, the vehicle will also turn on the hazard warning lights at the same time to warn the rear driver of the risk of collision.
- Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

WARNING

- The RCW is a driving assistance function, which may be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, obstacle type,

WARNING

distance from obstacles, driving environment, system response delay, etc., and may not be able to give timely warning, missed warning or false warning. The RCW function cannot replace the driver's judgment and operation.

- The driver shall ensure the normal operation of the RCW function, and the installation position of the RCW auxiliary radar shall be kept in good condition, such as covering with soil, snow and other obstructions, which shall be cleaned in time.
- RCW will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- The calibration of the rear auxiliary radar sensor of the RCW may be affected by vibration or collision, which will degrade the performance of the system. Should this occur, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider

Function settings

Users can activate or deactivate the RCW through the Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

System limitations

- The RCW is a driver assistance that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The RCW only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. When reversing, the car will not remind the collision risk directly behind.
- The system may not be able to issue an alert when encountering (including but not limited to) the following scenarios:
  - Poor visibility, such as rain, snow, fog and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - Any door, front and rear covers of the vehicle are not closed or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel or there is a risk of the vehicle becoming laterally unstable (e.g. excessive steering wheel angle or rotational speed).
  - The driver presses the brake pedal deeply.
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle is just powered on, or the driving assistance system is restarted, etc.).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.
- In case of (including but not limited to) the following scenarios, the system may miss, misdetect or fail to detect obstacles in time due to the influence of various factors such as rear occlusion or rear target type, location and occurrence time, resulting in the system not reminding or not reminding in time:
  - Poor weather conditions, such as rain, snow and fog.
  - There is a large vehicle in rear of the ego vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radar or camera of the vehicle.
  - The rear of the ego vehicle is blocked, or the light contrast between the obstacle and the front sight environment is not strong, which leads to unclear, inaccurate and incomplete identification of obstacles.
  - The ego vehicle or rear target in a curve.

- There is a target behind the ego vehicle that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- The speed of the detected object is too fast, for example, other vehicles suddenly move quickly or move close to the rear of the vehicle.
- The ego vehicle is backing up.
- Other situations beyond the detection conditions and range of the radar or camera of the vehicle.

- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light and reflection, the system may misdetect, for example, the system may misdetect rails, gantries, height limit poles or traffic signs, reflective ground spikes, etc. As obstacles, and then trigger reminders.

WARNING

- The RCW is a driving assistance function, which is affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance from obstacle, driving environment, system response delay and so on. The RCW function cannot replace the driver's judgment and operation. Do not rely too much on the warning issued by the RCW system, and do not replace the driver's observation and judgment with the backward collision warning.
- The RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a reminder, the driver should immediately take safety measures to avoid the vehicle falling into further danger.

WARNING

- Due to the performance limitation of the system, the RCW may not be sent in time, missed or wrong.
- The driver should always be vigilant, pay close attention to all possible dangerous situations around, and timely intervene or control the vehicle (such as appropriate deceleration, braking, steering, etc.) to ensure safe driving. Violation of the above operation will affect the driver's safe driving, may cause accidents, and even cause property damage, personal injury and death.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

Function instructions

- When the vehicle is reversing, the RCTA function detects other vehicles driving in the blind area behind the vehicle through radar. If the system recognizes that the driver has unintentionally deviated from the road surface, or if it detects that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the vehicle, pedestrian or rider passing laterally behind. The operating speed range of the RCTA system is 0 to 15 km/h.
- At the time of early warning, the instrument prompts the driver of the risk by displaying the light gray radar wave on the corresponding side of the vehicle, classical Chinese prompt, alarm tone and voice broadcast, and triggering the rendering of the target.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driving assistance function, which may be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, perception accuracy, target

WARNING

type, position relationship with the target, system delay, etc. It may not be able to send a warning in time or miss the trigger of the warning, or the system may trigger the warning by mistake due to misrecognition. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must always take responsibility for driving safety.

Function settings

- Users can activate or deactivate the RCTA through the Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle comes off the production line for the first time, the function is turned on by default.
- By default, the system is switched on when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in the following scenarios, including but not limited to:
  - Targets are outside radar detection range.
  - Poor visibility, such as night, rain, snow and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - The function switch is "OFF".
  - Vehicle is not in "R" gear.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.
- In case of the following scenarios, the system may miss detection, false detection or fail to detect obstacles in time due to the influence of various factors such as rear occlusion or rear target type, location and occurrence time, resulting in the system not warning or not warning in time, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle approaching from behind changes its lane at the last moment.
  - When the target vehicle approaches its own vehicle from behind at a very fast speed.
  - sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target vehicle is blocked.
  - Bad weather, such as rain and snow. The radar position is loose, falling off or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - In some environments, the detection may be affected or delayed. For example, when the radar cross section of the target is too small (it may be a bicycle, tricycle, carriage, pedestrian, electric bicycle, motorcycle or special-shaped vehicle, etc.), there is a risk that the system cannot confirm the distance to the target in front, and

the response to such target may be delayed or unable to respond.

- Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.

- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. Should this occur, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider
- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light or reflection, the system may trigger unnecessary braking on water stains, shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs on the ground.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driving assistance function, and its limitations only include common situations affecting rear lateral collision warning, and many factors may affect functional performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must always take responsibility for driving safety.
- The RCTA may be invalid or not timely due to several factors such as weather and road environment.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- Due to the performance limitation of the system, the RCTA may not be sent in time, missed or wrong.

Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB)

Function instructions

- The Rear Lateral Impact Braking function is designed to warn and assist the driver in braking when exiting a vertical/inclined parking space and encountering a laterally crossing vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist from the rear, where there is a risk of collision, and to assist in avoiding a collision with a vehicle crossing the road, especially if the driver's view is obscured by a vehicle parked alongside. The operating speed range of the RCTB is 0 to 10 km/h.
- When braking, the instrument prompts the driver of the risk by displaying the light gray radar wave on the corresponding side of the vehicle and the classical Chinese prompt.

WARNING

- RCTB is only a driving assistance function, which is not designed to avoid collision, but to assist the driver to avoid or mitigate collision.
- Braking will be affected by many factors, such as vehicle speed, perception accuracy, target type, position relationship with the target, system delay, braking system performance, tire status and so on. It may also cause the system to trigger the brake by mistake due to misrecognition. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must always take responsibility for driving safety.

Function Settings

Users can activate or deactivate the RCTB through the Touchscreen → Settings → ADAS → Safety Assist.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle comes off the production line for the first time, the function is turned on by default.
- By default, the system is switched on when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance feature that cannot cope with all traffic, weather, visibility, road and vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in the following scenarios, including but not limited to:
  - Targets are outside radar detection range.
  - Poor visibility, such as night, rain, snow and other bad weather, smoke, etc.
  - The function switch is in "Off" or "Remind".
  - Vehicle is not in "R" gear.
  - The driver presses the accelerator sharply.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, the vehicle has just been powered on, or the system has been restarted).
  - Scenarios mentioned in System General Limitations.
  - The system has failed or requires service.
- In case of the following scenarios, the system may miss detection, false detection or fail to detect obstacles in time due to the influence of various factors such as rear occlusion or rear target type, location and occurrence time, resulting in the system not braking or not braking in time, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle approaching from behind changes its lane at the last moment.
  - When the target vehicle approaches its own vehicle from behind at a very fast speed.
  - sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target vehicle is blocked.
  - Bad weather, such as rain and snow. The radar position is loose, falling off or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - In some environments, the detection may be affected or delayed. For example, when the radar cross section of the target is too small (it may be a bicycle, tricycle, carriage, pedestrian, electric bicycle, motorcycle or special-shaped vehicle, etc.), there is a risk that the system cannot confirm the distance to the target in front, and the response to such target may be delayed or unable to respond.
  - Millimeter-wave radar is interfered by other millimeter-wave radar sources, which leads to failure or misrecognition.
- RCTB will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. Should this occur, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider

- Under poor lighting conditions such as strong light or reflection, the system may trigger unnecessary braking on water stains, shadows, manhole covers, iron plates or road signs on the ground.
- The RCTB function is not activated frequently, and the system will not trigger the rear lateral collision brake again for tens of seconds after the previous rear lateral collision braking activation.

WARNING

- RCTB is only a driver assistance function, and its limitations only include common conditions affecting rear lateral impact braking, and many factors may affect functional performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must always take responsibility for driving safety.
- RCTB may fail or not be timely due to several factors such as weather and road environment.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

WARNING

- Due to the performance limitation of the system, the RCTB may not be sent in time, missed or wrong.

Lighting

Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)

Function instructions

- Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) is a driver assistance feature that helps the driver use the high beam properly in dark conditions. In dark scenes, it can be switched from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with maximum vision. Automatic switching from high beam to low beam in the presence of a vehicle in front, to avoid dazzling other drivers; and automatic switching from high beam to low beam in urban areas or other conditions.

Function Settings

- The user can enable and disable the Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) via Multimedia System → Settings → Light → Exterior Light.
- The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle starts.
- Example of Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC) indicator:

Standby State	Active Status	Fault Status
		

ON/OFF conditions

- Auto ON conditions:
  - The light is in AUTO position;
  - The vehicle speed is more than 35km/h and less than 140km/h;
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto OFF conditions:
  - Under the working condition of day/night, the high beam will be inhibited

when the road light source around the driving environment is sufficient;

- High beam headlights are suppressed when there are other road traffic participants;
- At night, if the driver turns on the turn signal, the high beam will be inhibited. After the turn signal is turned off, if the activation conditions are met, the high beam will be turned on again.

WARNING

Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the intelligent high beam may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios including but not limited to:

- Weather conditions such as heavy fog, heavy rain or heavy snow are extremely unfavorable for driving.
- There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
- There are highly reflective objects around (e.g., traffic signs on highways, water reflection on the road surface, etc.).
- The front windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- The IHBC system is an auxiliary light control function. But the system cannot completely replace the driver's judgement. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

REMINDER

- Abnormal function of the system or failure of the lighting system may affect the function of the intelligent high beam.
- The driver's manual activation of the high beam will inhibit the IHBC function.

Tire Pressure Monitoring

Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System

- The direct TPMS is an auxiliary system that monitors the tire pressure in real time, improves the driving safety and comfort of the vehicle, and reduces the accelerated wear of tires and the increase of vehicle energy consumption caused by insufficient tire pressure.
- To access the panoramic view, press on the steering wheel. Access the instrument cluster menu by pressing the button on the steering wheel, then select the tire pressure screen using the scroll button. ◁ and ▷ The user can enter the instrument menu through the key on the steering wheel, switch to the driving information bar , and select the display interface of tire pressure through the roller on the key.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure compensated by temperature of any one of the four tires is lower than 85% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault indicator lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. It is advisable to stop the vehicle and check the corresponding tires for slow leaks and to inflate them to a reasonable pressure.
- When the tire pressure is greater than 90% of the compensation air pressure, the low pressure alarm is cancelled.
- When the temperature of any one of the four tires is higher than 85°C for 3 consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high-temperature alarm, and the corresponding tire temperature indicator turns yellow. It is recommended to stop the vehicle and continue driving only after the tire temperature cools down.
- When the system is in operation, the tire pressure fault indicator is on after flashing, and the combination instrument displays "abnormal signal" or "please check the tire pressure monitoring system". Please check whether the corresponding tire pressure monitoring module is normal, whether it is in the strong electromagnetic field area for a long time, or whether the vehicle is equipped with electrical products. If it alarms for a long time, please contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile.

WARNING

- If the tire pressure is abnormal, this system does not prevent the vehicle from driving. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tire pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injury can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that

CAUTION

the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.

- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-BYD approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tires* or tire rotations. Please go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

System fault

When the signal used by the tire pressure monitoring system is not received or invalid, the indicator lamp on the instrument will display. It will flash for 60s and remain on, and the text "Please check the tire pressure monitoring system" will be displayed and the buzzer will give an alarm once. If the vehicle loses the tire pressure monitoring function, the driver should immediately drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for troubleshooting.

REMINDER

- The tire pressure monitoring display may also lose its function in the event of an ESC failure.
- System failure may occur after the anti-skid tire chain is installed.
- In the case of a tire underpressure alarm, resetting the TPMS without ensuring that the tire pressure is normal may cause the TPMS to be manually cleared. As a result, the TPMS may fail or the actual tire pressure may be excessively low at the next alarm. Therefore, make sure that all tires and tire pressures are normal before resetting.

The tire pressure shall be reset after the following operations:

- The tire pressure of one or more tires is adjusted.
- Any tire/wheel is replaced or rotated.
- Any wheel is adjusted for dynamic balance.
- The chassis is technically modified.
- The ambient temperature has changed by more than 40°C since the last reset.
- After one year or 10000 km.

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)

AVAS means that a warning sound is made to pedestrians in the vicinity of the vehicle when the vehicle is traveling at a low speed.

- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, it will make proper alerting sound to alarm the pedestrians.
- During driving forward:

- When the vehicle speed is above 0 km/h but does not exceed 20 km/h, the prompt sound increases with the increase of the vehicle speed.
- If the vehicle speed is above 20 km/h but does not exceed 30 km/h, the warning sound decreases with the increase in speed.
- If the vehicle speed is above 30 km/h, the warning sound stops automatically.

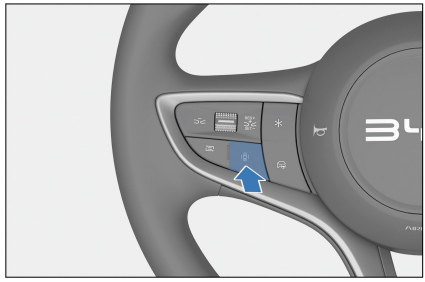
- When the vehicle is reversing, a continuous warning sound is given out.

WARNING

- If the prompt sound of the low-speed prompt system cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, please park the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open the window, and listen to the sound effect when driving at a constant speed of 0-20 km/h in "D" gear or at a speed of 6 km/h in reverse (the maximum volume at this time). If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

Panoramic View*

With the vehicle powered ON, press on the steering wheel or tap Panorama to enter the panoramic view interface.



- Tap the front, rear, right or left area of the vehicle icon on the left side to display a single view of the front, rear, right or left view of the vehicle in the right image area.
- In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen.
- Tap the radar icon in the automatic vehicle monitoring view to enable the radar display, and tap it again to disable. After the radar display is turned on, the monitor will display obstacle warning when the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.

WARNING

- The automatic vehicle monitoring system can provide transparent panoramic view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/driving. Investigation of foreign objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops,

WARNING

so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

- The panoramic view system is only to be used for parking/ driving assistance. It is not safe to park or drive the car relying only on this system, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the car. The surroundings of the car should be observed in other ways during the parking/ driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the panoramic view system; and when the panoramic view system is used for parking/driving, ensure that all the car doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the automatic vehicle monitoring screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front grille, side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting the performance of cameras, avoid directly washing these cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water gun.

WARNING

Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.

- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the panoramic view start button or shift into reverse while the multimedia system is not fully activated, the output on the panoramic view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.

Parking Assist System (PAS)

- During vehicle parking, the parking assist system (PAS) detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of an obstacle by a distance indicator on the touchscreen and an alarm emitted through the speaker.
- PAS is a way to help reverse the vehicle. The driver should observe the surroundings while reversing.
- When the vehicle is shifted to R, the touchscreen automatically displays a reverse image*.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

WARNING

- The parking assist system ceases to operate when the vehicle is moving forward at over 10 km/h.
- Do not place any articles within the sensors' working range.

WARNING

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

REMINDER

- The safety lines for reversing are only for distance reference in no-load condition of the vehicle.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and phone related buttons.

Reversing Radar Power Switch (RRPS)

- To enable or disable the reversing radar system, go to Infotainment touchscreen → ADAS → Parking Assist.
- When the power gear is "ON" or "OK", the EPB is released and the parking aid system is automatically turned on.
- When the parking assist system is enabled, the vehicle is not in Park, and the EPB and AVH are released, the obstacle detection mode of the parking assist system is enabled. When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, the corresponding image is displayed on the multimedia screen*, obstacle and the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle.
- Sensors can measure the distance between the vehicle and nearby obstacles in parallel or reverse parking. The measured distance is then displayed on the touchscreen and an alert is sounded by the speaker. When using the system, be sure to pay attention to surroundings.

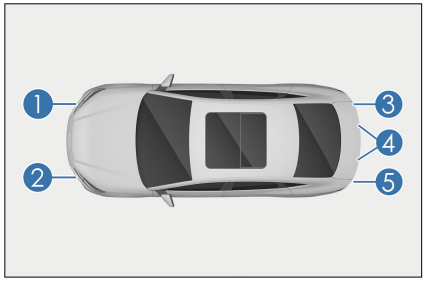
①Front right corner sensor

②Front left corner sensor

③Rear right corner sensor

④Rear left and right center sensors

⑤Rear left corner sensor



Distance Display Alarm

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the multimedia touchscreen displays the orientation of the obstacle and the approximate distance between the vehicle and the obstacle, and the speaker may beep.

Working Examples of Central Sensor

Approximate Distance (mm)	Display examples on the multimedia display screen	Alarm Sound
About 700 to 1,200		Slow
About 400 to 700		Fast
About 200 to 400		Constant

Working Example of Corner Sensors

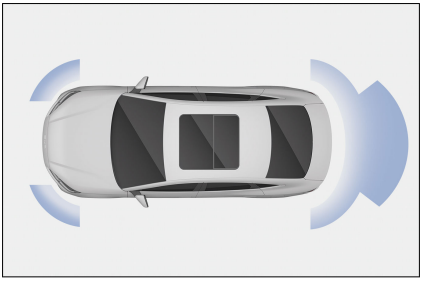
Approximate Distance (mm)	Display examples on the multimedia display screen	Alarm Sound
About 400 to 600		Fast
About 200 to 400		Constant

Note: 0-200mm is the blind area of the system, the detection accuracy is poor, and the alarm prompt information is not accurate enough, so the alarm prompt of this distance is only for reference and not required.

Working Sensors and the Detection Range

All sensors work when reversing.

The detection range of the sensor is shown in the figure. The above detection range is limited. Before reversing, check the surroundings of the vehicle and then slowly reverse.



REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment.

REMINDER

Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.

- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the parking radar system is indicated by the prompt "Reversing radar system failure, please contact BYD service" on the instrument cluster and a beep. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

Sensor Detecting Information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the performance of the sensor to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, accumulated water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow on the sensor or it is frozen.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle is significantly tilted or excessively overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, macadam or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - It is very noisy in the vicinity of the vehicle due to the sound of vehicle horns, motorbike engines, the screech of brakes of large vehicles, or ultrasounds.
  - There's another vehicle equipped with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a towing ring.
  - The bumper or sensor is strongly impacted.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
  - The vehicle is in the hot sun or severely cold weather.
  - The installed suspension is not original and lower than the original ones.
- In addition to the above, the sensor may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance of some objects due to their specific shape.
- The shape and material of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay special attention to the following obstacles:
  - Electric wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
  - Oobject with sharp edges and corners.
  - Low obstacles.
  - High obstacles with the upper part extending outward towards the vehicle.
  - Object under the bumper.
  - Object too near the vehicle.
  - People in the vicinity of the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing).

- When the touchscreen displays an image or the speaker emits a chirping sound, it indicates that the sensor detects an obstacle or experiences external interference. If this persists, it is recommended to have it serviced at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, it is important to remember that these systems are only auxiliary and should not be relied on excessively during driving.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- Intelligent dynamic braking system is an advanced decoupling electro-hydraulic braking system, which integrates the functions of vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS), ESC and other products.
- This system, based on the driver's braking demand, provides power assistance for braking when needed. It also features advanced control functions like ABS, electronic brakeforce distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), comfort stop (CST), and comfort regenerative braking system (CRBS) that enhance vehicle stability, comfort, and brake energy recovery efficiency.

Vehicle Dynamics Control(VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system judges the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction Control System (TCS)

TCS prevents drive wheels from slipping during acceleration by reducing the engine power. It also applies braking forces when necessary to prevent drive wheels from idling. It makes the vehicle easy to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

CDP* (Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake)

When the EPB switch is pulled up, CDP starts to work and the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (the deceleration is 0.4g if only the EPB switch is pulled up and 0.8g if the EPB switch is pulled up and the brake pedal is pressed at the same time) until the vehicle comes to a stop. If the driver releases EPB, CDP stops functioning.

ESC operation instructions

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

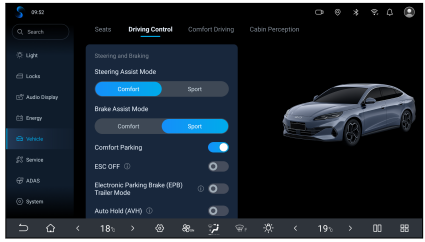
- Brake assist mode
  - Brake assist mode (name of setting item) is used to adjust brake assist. In different modes, the relationship curve between brake assist depth and vehicle deceleration is different, and the driver can choose the braking style he likes.
  - The user can press ESC OFF button* or enter the Brake Assist Mode setting interface through → Vehicle → Driving Control, and select to adjust "Comfort"/ "Sport".

Multi-Collision Braking*(MCB)

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle engages automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights also light up to alert oncoming traffic and prevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will go off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

Comfort Parking (CST)

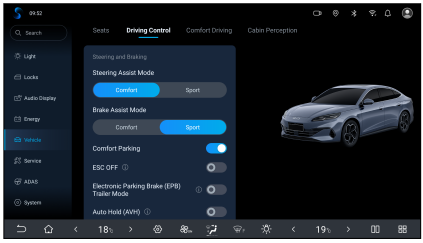
- Comfort parking function: When the vehicle decelerates and stops in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power brake system reduces the suspension pitch and impact at the moment of stopping by controlling the braking pressure of the four brakes, providing the driver with smooth parking.
- The user can enter the "Comfort Parking" setting interface by going to Settings → Driving Control, and select to enable or disable this function.
- After the comfortable parking function is triggered, the braking distance may be slightly increased by 2 ~ 5cm, so please increase the distance from the vehicle in front or the obstacle in front before parking.



- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is turned on or the rain is detected by the rain sensor, the intelligent dynamic braking system applies a small braking pressure to the four brakes to make the brake pad contact with the brake disc and remove the water film on the brake disc, so as to achieve the purpose of reducing the braking response time and shortening the braking distance.

- As long as the system detects rain or wiper on signal, it will wipe the brake disc repeatedly after a certain interval to improve safety.

- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce the power output from the motor to wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
- When the ESC system needs to be turned off, turn off the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button* or setting the multimedia → ADAS → Driving Control. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.

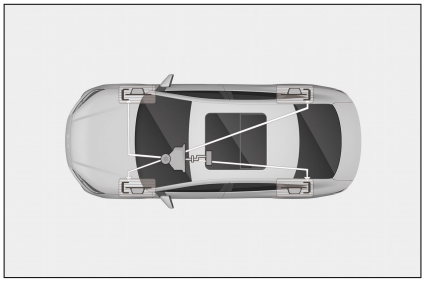


- After ESC is turned off, some of its deactivated functions will be enabled if either the ESC OFF button is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h. In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- Restart the ESC system after shutting down the engine
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC system start and speed linkage
  - If the ESC system is turned off, when the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold (80 km/h), the ESC system starts on its own.
- ESC activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, be sure to drive carefully, because careless driving may cause an accident.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Tire replacement
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the

driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits. Each circuit passes through the vehicle diagonally (the front left wheel brake is connected with the rear right wheel brake, etc.) and acts. If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked. If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- In case of a sudden brake or application of brake on a slippery road, ABS helps to prevent the wheels from locking or slipping, so that you can keep the steering control.



- When the front tires skid, there is no steering control, which means that the vehicle still moves forward even though the steering wheel is turned. ABS helps to prevent locking and, since rapid pulsating braking is much faster than human reaction, helps to maintain steering control.
- Do not press the brake pedal in a pulsating manner; otherwise, ABS may fail. When turning the steering wheel to avoid danger, always maintain strong and stable pressure on the brake pedal so that ABS functions.
- When the ABS is working, the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal.

EBD (Electronic Brake Force Distribution)

- The EBD function is an auxiliary function of ABS. Before the action of ABS, if the slip rate of the rear wheel is high, the ABS system will adjust the brake pressure of the rear wheel to obtain a smoother and more ideal brake force distribution.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (e.g., excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Driving on bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the

REMINDER

vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

Other Main Functions

Snow Chains

- Snow chains are only for emergency use or used in specific areas expressly stipulated by law.
- Snow chains are to be fitted to the front wheels and extra care is required for driving a vehicle fitted with snow chains on icy roads. Some snow chains may damage the tires, wheels, suspension and body of the vehicle, so the thin anti-skid chain should be selected. It is recommended that the thickness or diameter of the anti-skid chain should not exceed 5mm, so that there is enough free space between the tire and other parts in the wheel housing.
- Please carefully check and read the component assembly drawing and other instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.
- Consult the BYD authorized dealer or service provider from which you purchase the vehicle before you purchase snow chains and install them onto the tires.
- After snow chains are installed, be sure to travel at a speed below 30 km/h on snow-covered roads.
- In order to minimize wear of wheels and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Do not drive above 30 km/h or the limit speed specified by the snow chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.

REMINDER

- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Tires snow chains should be used symmetrically and remove immediately when not in use.
- If you hear abnormal noise from the anti-skid chain, it indicates that the anti-skid chain may touch the suspension, body or brake pipeline, and you should stop immediately to check.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

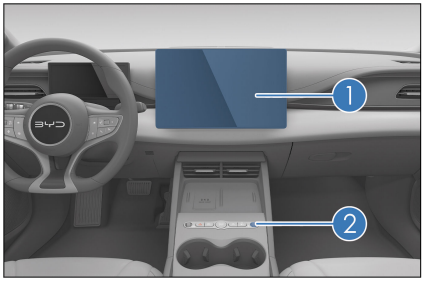
Infotainment system

Infotainment Touchscreen

- When the power gear of the whole vehicle is in the "ON" gear, the initial screen will be displayed for several seconds, and the system will start to work. To better experience multimedia functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

①Infotainment touchscreen

②Scroll button



- When the multimedia is started, press the first time to turn off the audio, and press the second time to turn on the audio mode; press and hold for 3s to restart the multimedia.
- When the multimedia or radio station is activated, turn the wheel upward (in the front of the vehicle) to increase the volume; turn the wheel downward (in the rear of the vehicle) to decrease the volume; the volume changes from 0 to 39. A mute icon appears in the status bar when the volume is 0.

WARNING

- To avoid faults in the multimedia system, do not use a high-power inverter on the vehicle.
- Do not format or root the device without authorization, as this may cause multimedia system or vehicle malfunction.
- In driving, please use the multimedia system in landscape mode wherever possible for your safety.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove finger from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - The touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

⮌ : returns to the previous page or exits the program.

: returns to the homepage.

: shows recently opened applications.

: switches between landscape and portrait touchscreen modes.

: splits screen if applications support.

: enables screen saver.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and Responses:

- Tapping: To open an application, select a function, press a key on the screen, or enter a character using the screen keys, simply tap with your finger.
- Drag: To move an icon, thumbnail, or preview to a new location, hold and drag it to the desired location and release.
- Slide: This can be done on the main page or the application interface.
- Double tapping: zoom in or out an image.
- Spreading/pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Three-finger touch screen slide left/ right: Adjust the air volume of the air conditioner.
- Three-finger touch screen slide up/ down: Adjust the temperature of the air conditioner.
- Swipe down the top of the touchscreen: open quick menu.
- Slide up the bottom of the screen: open task management center.

BYD Assistant

BYD Assistant allows car owners to enjoy voice control navigation, music, air conditioning, telephone and other operations. Just call softly: "Hi BYD", you can start the intelligent voice assistant to recognize and execute your instructions. Support continuous conversation, no need to wake up repeatedly; interrupt at any time, respond immediately.

- How to wake up BYD Assistant:
  - Car owners can wake up the voice assistant by clicking the button on the steering wheel or clicking the desktop voice icon in the upper left corner or the voice wake-up word "Hi, BYD". After the intelligent voice is awakened, it can begin to recognize voice commands.
- Vehicle control functions: It supports voice control of air conditioning, windows, sunroof, sunshade, atmosphere lights, seat ventilation, seat heating, wireless charging and other functions. It can be easily controlled by "opening the skylight" and "adjusting the air conditioner to 27 degrees".
- Audio and video functions: It supports playing music, video, children's stories, cartoons, audio novels, news, radio and so on. Multimedia applications can be easily controlled by voice to play, pause, previous, next, fast forward, fast rewind, play a song, loop, view lyrics and so on.

Bluetooth Call

Bluetooth Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap “Please connect Bluetooth” to establish connection.
2. Tap Scanning to search for available device.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.

4. After successful connection, you can make various common settings for Bluetooth.

Bluetooth Call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap contacts, call log, and missed calls, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Scroll up the call card / click in the blank area to zoom out on the dialing page.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

External applications

The multimedia system is Android system, which can be installed and used by external applications.

- Installation of external applications:
  1. Download the application you need;
  2. Click on the application file and select ALLOW to install the application from an external source;
  3. After installation is completed, find the installed apps in your app list and click to use them.

CAUTION

- Applications that are not officially certified may not work properly.
- Installing a lot of unnecessary software may make the system unusable. Please use this function with caution.

- Uninstallation of external applications:
  1. go to Settings→ Application management →Application interface, in this way you can search for installed applications and select the ones you want to uninstall.
  2. Click “Uninstall” and confirm the operation.

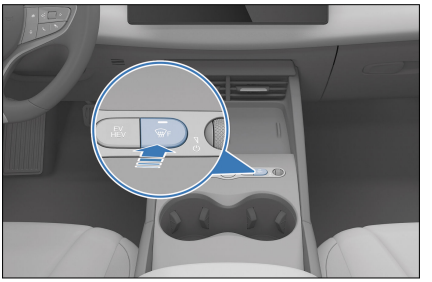
CAUTION

- The applications on the infotainment system cannot be downloaded.

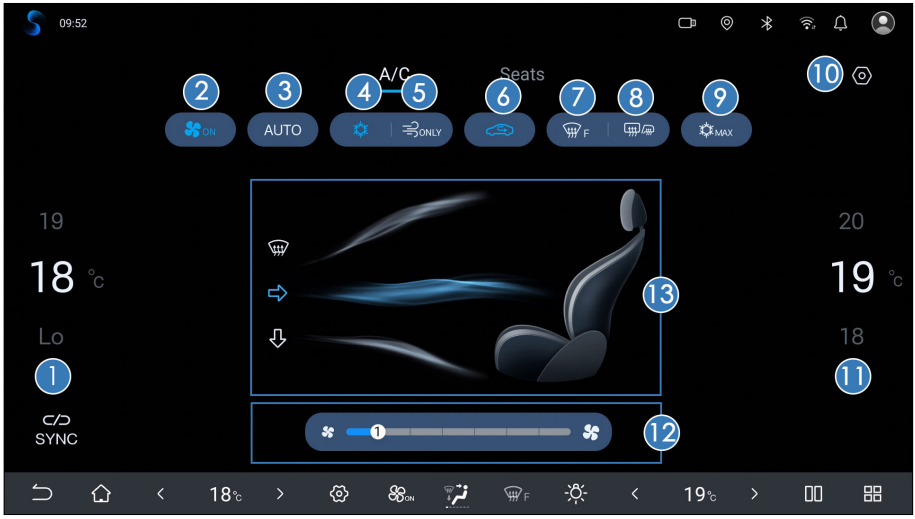
A/C

A/C Panel

Defrosting button for front windshield



A/C Operation Interface



1 Driver climate control button

2 A/C ON/OFF

3 Automatic A/C button

4 Cooling

5 Ventilation Button

6 Recirculation/Fresh air

7 Defrosting button for front windshield

8 Rear windshield and side mirror defrosting button*

9 Maximum Cooling

10 A/C Settings

11 Front passenger climate control

12 Blower Speed Adjustment

13 Blowing Mode

REMINDER

- Odor of A/C:
  - When the A/C is just turned on, the air from the A/C may have a moist and mildewy odor, which is normal. During the operation of the A/C, the evaporator is easy to be attached by the A/C condensate, and the wet evaporator tends to adsorb unfiltered human perspiration, dust, etc.
- How to prevent it:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.

REMINDER

- Check, clean or replace the filter screen regularly.
- Keep the compartment as clean and fresh as possible.

- If the odor persists after odor prevention methods are used, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. That is because the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator needs to be dried to prevent mold fermentation.

Function Definition

A/C button

- Press A/C ON/OFF button to turn off the A/C System. The blowing mode is not changed and the recirculation mode is activated. Press the "On/Off" button on the panel again or click the "Off" button on the air conditioner operation interface to turn off the air conditioner.
- When the A/C turns off, press the A/C button again, and the A/C memory sets the temperature, blower speed and ventilation mode as the last state.

Blower Speed Adjustment

Click the appropriate blower fan speed gear to set the blower fan at the required speed. The higher the gear is, the higher the blower fan speed is, and the more air is input.

Defrosting button for front windshield

- Press the "Front windshield defrosting button" on the A/C panel or click the "Front" button on the display screen, and the air flow mainly blows to the front windshield and side window glass. Press the "Front windshield defrosting button" on the A/C panel again or click "Front" on the display screen, and the A/C system will return to the previous state.
- Press the “Front windshield defrosting button" on the air conditioning panel or click the "front" button on the display screen to turn on the defrosting and defogging function, and turn on the air conditioning at the same time, that is, whether the compressor control button is operated or not, the air conditioning will be turned on.

Climate control

- Driver climate control button
  - In independent mode: used for climate control of the driver side.
  - In associated mode: used for climate control of the driver side and the front passenger side.
  - To increase the temperature, tap the upper arrow on the touchscreen or tap the temperature display area and then slide downward. To decrease the temperature, tap the lower arrow on the touchscreen or tap the temperature display area and then slide upward.
- Front passenger climate control
  - In independent mode: used for climate control of the front passenger side.
  - In associated mode: adjust the front passenger side temperature and exit the associated mode to enter the independent mode.

- To increase the temperature, tap the upper arrow on the touchscreen or tap the temperature display area and then slide downward. To decrease the temperature, tap the lower arrow on the touchscreen or tap the temperature display area and then slide upward.
- "Lo" is displayed when the temperature is set to the lowest. When it is adjusted to the hottest position, "HI" is displayed.

Dual-zone control

- Tap this button to switch from independent mode to associated mode.
  - Independent mode: The temperatures on the driver's side and the front passenger's side can be set separately. After this mode is selected, the button icon lights up.
  - Associated mode: The temperatures on the driver's side and the front passenger's side can be adjusted simultaneously through the driver climate control button. In association mode, the button icon is gray.
- In association mode, operating the front passenger climate control automatically switches to the independent mode.

Maximum Cooling

Tap the Maximum Cooling icon. The A/C system runs in fully cool air mode, compressor is turned on, the temperature is adjusted to LO, the blower speed is adjusted to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air blows in face level mode. Click this button again, and the air conditioner enters the automatic mode.

Cooling

Tap this button to turn on the A/C. At this time, the icon lights up and the compressor starts to work. Tap this button again to turn off the A/C compressor. At this time, the icon goes out and the compressor stops working.

Recirculation/Fresh air

Click the internal and external circulation button, the air inlet mode changes from the external circulation icon to the internal circulation icon, and the air inlet mode is internal circulation. At this time, press this button again, the air inlet mode changes from the internal circulation icon to the external circulation icon, and the air inlet mode is external circulation.

Rear Windshield Defroster

- The power position must be "ON". Click the "Rear Defrost" button to enable the rear windshield defrost/defogger and the side mirror defrost/defogger* to work.
- Thin electric heating wires on the inside of the rear windshield glass and side mirror will make the glass and lens clear. After the glass and lens surface are clear, press the "Rear Defrost" button again to turn off the defrost/defogger. The system will automatically shut down after 15 minutes of defrost/defogger operation. Continued use will cause the low voltage battery to discharge, especially during stop-and-go driving.

WARNING

- Do not touch the mirror surface after turning on the defogger switch because the side mirror surface will become hot.
- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.
- To prevent the low-voltage battery from discharging, turn off the

WARNING

defogger switch when it is not in the "ON" position.

Ventilation Button

- Click the ventilation button, the air conditioner enters the ventilation mode, the internal and external circulation state is external circulation, adjust the temperature to turn on the air conditioner, the blowing is natural wind, click this button again, the air conditioner enters the automatic mode.

Blowing Mode Selection

- Select the appropriate blowing mode by clicking on the arrow on the display.
- You can turn on multiple modes (up to three) simultaneously by using the touchscreen.
- It can be adjusted according to the following air outlet diagram.
  - Face level mode: Air is blown onto the driver's and passengers' upper bodies.
  - Footwell vent: Air is blown onto the driver's and passengers' feet.
  - Defrost: Air is blown onto the front windshield and side windows.

Usage Precautions

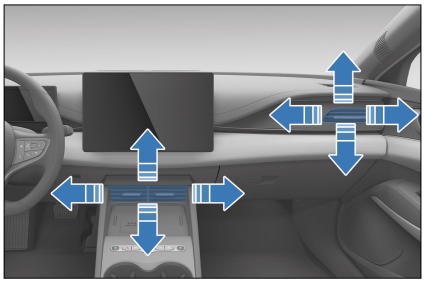
- To quickly cool down the vehicle parked under the burning sun, open the window and drive for several minutes to help exhaust the hot air and speed up the cooling of the air conditioning in the vehicle.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a period of time.
- If rapid cooling is needed, the maximum cooling mode can be opened, and the air conditioner will enter the optimal cooling operation state to ensure the rapid cooling of the interior environment.
- Make sure that the air inlet grille in front of the windshield is not blocked (by such things as leaves or snow).
- In wet weather, do not let cold air blow onto the windshield. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats unoccupied so that the air in the vehicle can be fully circulated.
- In cold weather, the fan speed is recommended to be set to a high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake channel, so as to reduce fogging of the window.
- In cold weather, keep the setting in recirculation mode for several minutes for rapid heating in the compartment. To prevent the windows from fogging up, switch to fresh air mode after the temperature in the compartment rises.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- When heating, press the compressor control icon to light it up (the compressor is turned on), reducing the moisture in the airflow.
- In ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind outside the vehicle, so it is suitable for spring and autumn.
- When the ambient temperature is low, to achieve better air conditioning and heating effects, it is recommended to manually switch to the HEV mode.

- Press and hold the "start/stop" button of the electronic smart key to turn on/off the air conditioner.

Vents

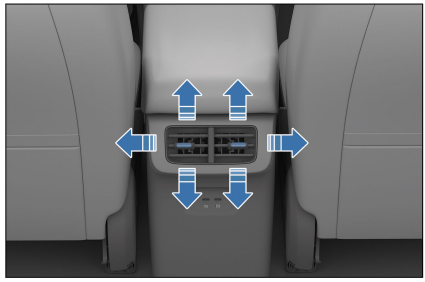
Front Vent

- To open/close a vent or adjust its blower speed or venting angle, use the tab in the center.

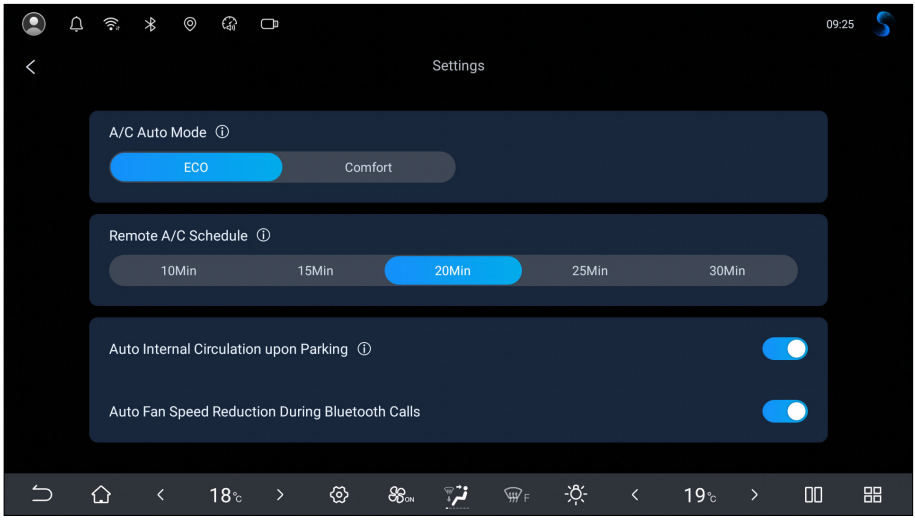


Rear Vents

- To open/close a vent or adjust its blower speed or venting angle, use the tab in the center.



A/C Settings



A/C Auto Mode

- Economical and Comfort modes are available.

Remotely controlled air conditioner running time (mins)

- Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.

Auto Air Recirculation when Parking

- AUTO Recirculated Mode in Tunne

Fan Speed Reduction during Calls

- Fan Speed Reduction ON/OFF during Calls

BYD App

About BYD App

- BYD App is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) developed by BYD independently. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- Search for "BYD" in Google Play or App Store to download and install “BYD” App.

CAUTION

The actual application on the shelf in the region shall prevail, and some countries/regions have not launched this application.

Account Registration

After downloading and installing the BYD App, register and log in to your account through the mobile guide by following the steps below.

1. After starting the App, click "Register" to enter the "Register" interface;
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap “Send email” to receive verification code, and then enter the code in app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, doors and windows, and tire pressure.
2. Tap lock, unlock, light flashing & honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation, see ***P*** for details.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.
- For some areas where BYD APP cannot be used, remote vehicle control related functions, such as vehicle start, unlocking/locking, NFC, driving password and other functions, will not be available.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management

Tap the icon on the upper right corner to go to the individual center.

- Vehicle management: changes vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- About us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

BYD Mobile Phone Bluetooth Digital Key*

Use the BYD Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range mobile phone Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.

- You can download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- With vehicles supporting Bluetooth digital key, you can use the key after activating it in the BYD App.
- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The key can be used without network. After the key connection, you can select operations, and the app will immediately send commands to control the vehicle.
- In order to ensure the use experience, when starting the vehicle, please use the Bluetooth key close to the driver position.

CAUTION

- Before activating the mobile phone Bluetooth vehicle key, it is necessary to ensure that the network signal at the vehicle end is good. If the activation fails, you can try to move the vehicle to a good network location and activate the Bluetooth key at the app end again.
- After the Bluetooth key of the mobile phone is unlocked, the door will be automatically locked without any operation in a short time.
- When the phone Bluetooth key fails to connect or fails to operate for many times, you can try to turn off the system Bluetooth and then turn it on, or try to restart the application.
- The use distance of mobile phone Bluetooth car key is limited by the

CAUTION

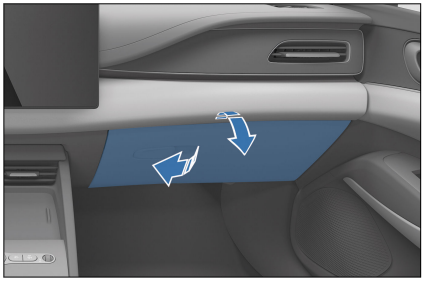
environment around the car and the performance of the mobile phone. In the case of dense vehicles, the use distance will be shortened.

- The mobile phone Bluetooth key requires your mobile phone to turn on the Bluetooth switch. In case of any problem, please contact the dealer.

Storage

Glove Box

- To open the glovebox, pull up the glovebox handle.
- Push the glovebox cover up to close it.

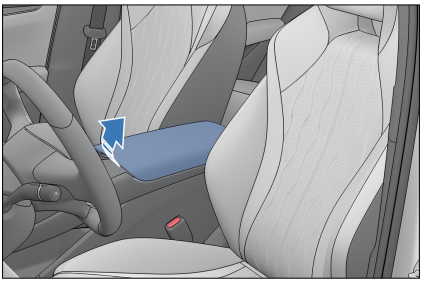


REMINDER

- Keep the glove box closed while the vehicle is in motion.

Cubby Box

- When using the central storage box, pull up to open the central storage box.



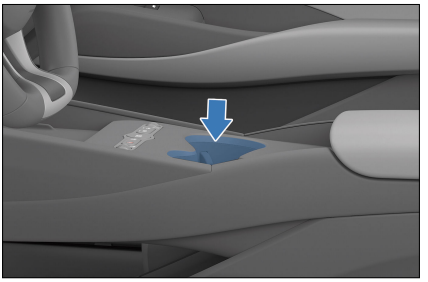
REMINDER

- Please keep the front central armrest box closed during driving.

Cup Holder

Front Seat Cup Holder

The cup holder is used for securely placing the cup, ashtray or beverage can.



REMINDER

- The cup holder should hold the cup or beverage can securely to prevent the liquid in the cup or beverage can from spilling.

Rear Seat Cup Holder

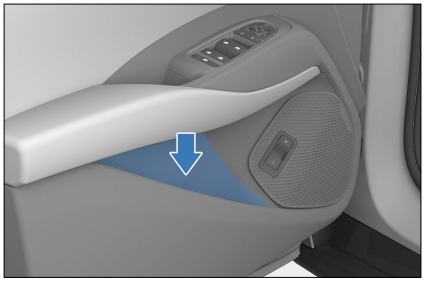
- Pull out the rear seat armrest to access the rear cup holders.

CAUTION

- When using the cup holder, do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly to prevent liquid spillage and burn you or other passengers.
- Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage when you are opening and closing the doors and driving.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

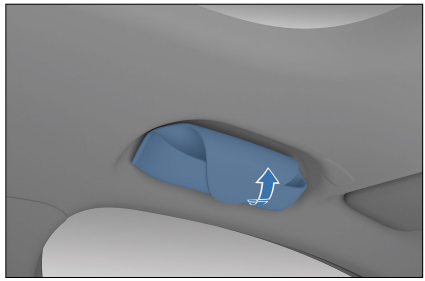
Door Bins

- There are storage boxes on the four doors, which can be used to place mobile phones and bills.



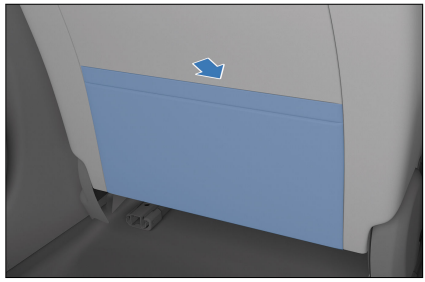
Glasses Case

Press the glasses case cover to open it.



Seatback Pockets

- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



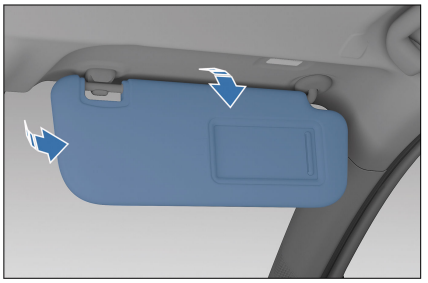
Other In-Vehicle Devices

Sun visor

①Sun Visor

- To block the sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block the light from the side, remove the slewing sleeve from the

fixed support and turn sun visors to the side window.



②Vanity Mirror

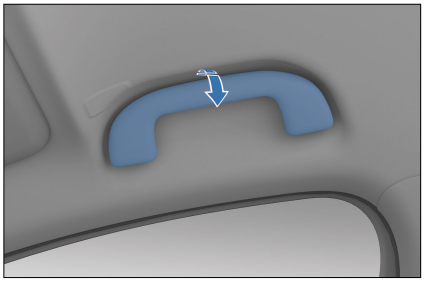
- To use the vanity mirror, if equipped, pull down a sun visor and slide the vanity mirror cover aside.

REMINDER

- Reasonable and correct use of sun visors can improve driving comfort and safety.

Grab Handles

- Pull the safety handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.



CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

12V Auxiliary Power

- It is used for accessories with 12V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- When using the 12 V standby power, it can be used only when the cover is opened and the vehicle power supply is in the "OK" position.

CAUTION

- In order to prevent the fuse from blowing, the power consumption must not exceed the total load of the vehicle 12V/120 W.
- To prevent the low voltage battery from running out of charge, do not use the 12 V standby power for extended periods of time when the drive motor is not running.
- When the 12V auxiliary power is not in use, the power cover should be closed. Do not insert any object other than a suitable plug into the 12 V standby power or allow any liquid to enter the socket, as this may cause electrical failure.

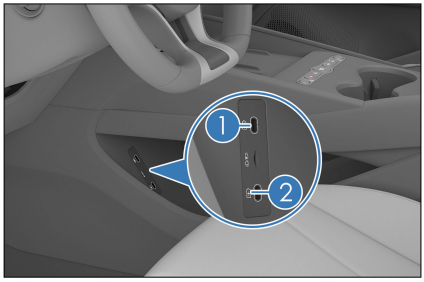
USB charge port

Rear Row USB Ports

- They are located at the hollowed-out part below the auxiliary dashboard near the driver's side seat.

①Type-A interface

② Type-C interface

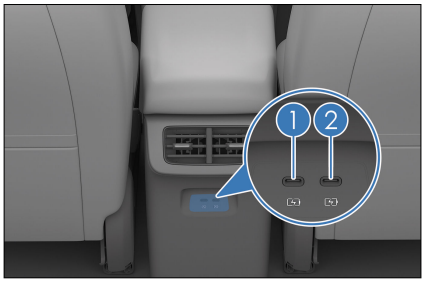


Rear Row USB Ports

- The rear USB port is located behind the central armrest box.

①Type-C interface

① Type-A interface

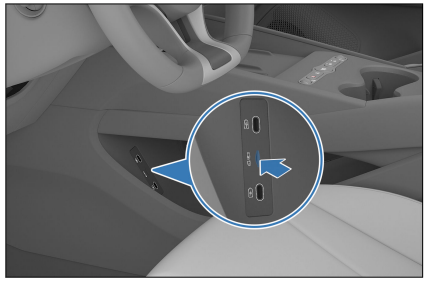


REMINDER

- It can be used only when the power gear of the vehicle is in the "OK" gear.

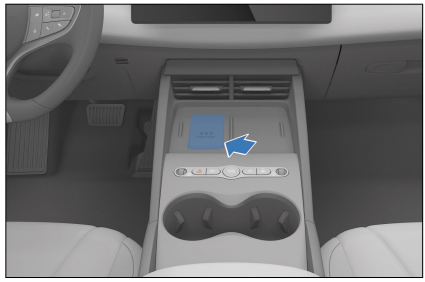
SD Card Slot

- An SD card slot is arranged at the hollowed-out part below the auxiliary dashboard in the direction close to the main driver's side.



Wireless Phone Charger*

- The user can slide down the status bar at the top of the multimedia to open the "Convenient" interface to light up the mobile phone wireless charging setting icon, and the function is turned on; click this setting icon again, and the wireless charging function is turned off.
- After the vehicle is started, the mobile phone is placed in the wireless charging area, the mobile phone screen is upward, and the mobile phone automatically enters the wireless charging, accompanied by the multimedia UI interface charging icon display.



- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- During wireless charging, ensure that the intelligent key is more than 25cm away from the charging area.
- Do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other items containing metal components on the wireless charging area together with the smartphone, so as to avoid dysfunctions and even safety accidents.
- Do not place heavy objects on the charging area to avoid damage to the charging area.
- If the smartphone wireless charging system fails, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD is not liable for any problems caused by abnormal use. If the product has been disassembled or modified, the warranty service is terminated.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not place the smartphone in the vehicle for charging to avoid potential safety hazards.
- Do not check smartphone charging for a long time during driving to ensure traffic safety.
- When charging the smartphone wirelessly, if any metal object between the smartphone and the rubber pad is found, do not remove it immediately by hand to avoid burns.
- In order to achieve better charging effect, the center of the mobile phone coil must be aligned with the center of the wireless charger (charging area character position),

CAUTION

otherwise it may not be able to charge.

- Do not spray water on the charging area to prevent water from entering the wireless charger through the gap of the rubber pad, thus avoiding charger failure.
- When the temperature is too high, the charging of the smartphone may stop and continues after the temperature drops.
- BYD is not responsible for the problems caused by the external wireless charging coil. Please use such coil with caution.
- The wireless charging system can help charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.

REMINDER

- A thick smartphone case may cause charging failure.
- When the vehicle runs through bumps, wireless charging may be briefly interrupted.
- Try to ensure that the mobile phone placement surface is parallel to the charging module. If the smartphone deviates from the wireless charging area and stops charging, move the smartphone back to the wireless charging area.
- In the event of smartphone wireless charging failure, make sure that there is no object placed on the wireless charging area or wait for the wireless charging area to cool down before

REMINDER

charging again. If the wireless charging still fails, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- If the mobile phone is still charging after the power withdrawal, the meter will ring and the words "Don't forget the mobile phone" will display for 5s after you open the left front door.
- The smartphone wireless charging setting icon can be added or deleted in the edit bar on the Quick interface of the Multimedia System.
- The smartphone wireless charging is applicable to QI certified smartphones only.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging* module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone’ s manufacturer.
- The charging power of mobile phone wireless fast charging* depends on the fast charging power supported by the mobile phone itself, and the vehicle fast charging * supports up to 50 W.
- Certain phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- Maintenance plan aims to ensure driving stability, safety and economy, reducing the occurrence of faults.
- For the planned maintenance interval, refer to the maintenance schedule depending on the reading of the odometer or the time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.
- These are particularly important maintenance items, and the maintenance intervals of each item are recorded in the maintenance schedule. The hose with any deterioration or damage should be replaced immediately.
- The maintenance schedule lists all maintenance items necessary to keep your vehicle in the best operating condition.

Maintenance Plan Requirements

The vehicle must be maintained according to a maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated mainly under one or more of the following special conditions, some maintenance schedule items need to be carried out more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Driving on rough, muddy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on dusty roads.
- Driving conditions
  - The vehicle is used to tow a camping trailer or a roof bracket is installed on the vehicle.
  - The vehicle is driven within 8 km repeatedly and driven in an environment with temperature below zero.
  - Frequent stopping and starting or low-speed long-distance driving conditions.The examples include police cars, taxis, or vehicles carrying goods.

Maintenance Schedule

Vehicle Maintenance

The basic maintenance of the vehicle is carried out in accordance with the following maintenance time and maintenance mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Maintenance Item	Time and mileage interval for maintenance
Check whether the cooling water pipe is intact and tightly locked at the connecting parts	Check every 12 months or 15,000 km
Check brake pads and discs	Every 24 months or 30,000 km

Maintenance Item	Time and mileage interval for maintenance
Check brake system pipeline and hoses	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check steering wheel and lever	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check drive shaft dust cover	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check ball pin and dust cover	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check front and rear suspension	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Tire wear (check front and rear wheel alignment when tire uneven wear is greater than 2 mm)	Check during maintenance, and carry out tire transposition if necessary; In bad working conditions, increase the frequency of inspection, and carry out tire transposition if necessary
Check the coolant level in the expansion tank	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check brake fluid	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check whether the power battery tray, anti-collision bar, guard plate and explosion-proof valve are bumped and deformed, and whether the power assembly leaks	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check the A/C strainer and filter	Every 24 months or 30,000 km. In case of severe environment or reduced air outlet, it is recommended to check in time and replace the air conditioning filter screen if necessary
Check exhaust pipe joint for air leakage	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check fuel filler cap, fuel pipe and connector	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Check charcoal canister	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Replacing A/C coolant*	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every 6 years or 90,000 km
Replace the engine coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every 6 years or 90,000 km
Replace the engine coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every 6 years or 90,000 km
Replace brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every 2 years or 30,000 km

Maintenance Item	Time and mileage interval for maintenance
Replace EHS special gear oil	Check the EHS gear oil quantity during maintenance, and replace the oil and filter element assembly every 4 years or 60,000 km
Replace the gear oil in the transmission, front-drive reducer oil and rear-drive transmission oil*	Replace oil every 4 years or 60,000 km
Replace the transmission filter element	Replace the filter(press filter) element every 4 years or 60,000 km
Replace oil and oil filter (turbocharged engine)	Replace every 12 months or 15,000 km
Replace engine oil and oil filter (naturally aspirated engine)	Replace every 12 months or 15,000 km
Spark plug	Replace every 45,000 km
Fuel filter (non-integrated)	Every 24 months or 30,000 km
Replace air filter element	Replace every 24 months or 20,000 km thereafter; conduct additional inspection under severe service conditions, and replace if necessary
Replace charcoal canister dust filter (DMTL*)	Every 2 years or 30,000 km, or upon frequent automatic fuel gun stopping during refueling.
Carbon canister vent pipe assembly (including ash filter)	Every 24 months or 30,000 km

REMINDER

- In order to keep the high-voltage battery in the optimum state, it is necessary to (at least every 6 months or 72,000 km) fully charge and discharge the vehicle on a regular basis to achieve the purpose of battery self-calibration, or contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity test and calibration.
- In following bad working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the recommended

REMINDER

maintenance intervals according to the actual situation to protect the vehicle. Drive the vehicle in low-temperature environment (ambient temperature <5°C) for a long time, and the continuous driving time in HEV mode is short (<15min) every time, or it is frequently driven in a slow crawling condition (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

- For accidents vehicles or vehicles with abnormal suspension, it is necessary to check whether

REMINDER

the battery pack high-voltage wiring harness connector is loose, and the after-sales department sends a technical notice to the BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Remarks:

- The maintenance period in the table is calculated from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, please operate the vehicle correctly according to the following instructions.
  - Before the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 50% during running-in in ECO mode.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.

The replacement time of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling the gasoline engine.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- In order to ensure that the vehicle runs with the best working efficiency and to reduce the occurrence of faults, maintenance must be carried out according to the maintenance schedule.
- For the planned maintenance interval, refer to the maintenance schedule depending on the reading of the odometer or the time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that the maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance items and driving time or distance listed in the maintenance schedule are based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as regular means of transportation to carry passengers and goods, so avoid exceeding the load limit of the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion:

- Saline and alkaline substances, dust and moisture are accumulated on the vehicle floor.
- The vehicle is in a high-humidity environment or some parts of the vehicle are in a humid and hightemperature environment for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

To prevent vehicle corrosion, the following guidelines shall be observed:

- Wash the vehicle frequently
  - If you drive on saline-alkali roads in winter or live by the sea, wash the landing part of the vehicle at least once a month, clean chassis and wheel cover with high-pressure water gun or steam to reduce corrosion, and thoroughly clean chassis of the vehicle after winter.
- Check body paint and decorative parts
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check the interior of the compartment
  - Moisture and dust accumulated under the carpet cause corrosion, so the underneath of the carpet should be regularly checked and kept dry.
  - When transporting such goods as chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, and salts, special care should be taken, and proper containers must be used. In the event of splashing or leakage, clean the vehicle immediately and keep it dry.
- Use mudguards
  - If the vehicle is running in a salinealkali area or on a gravel road, mudguards can protect the vehicle. The bigger and closer to the ground the mudguards, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- To prevent color incongruity or rough surfaces, avoid secondary paint spraying if the top coat has no obvious scratches.
- If the vehicle is parked for a long time, it should be parked in a garage or well-ventilated place, and covered with a special body cover in winter. Choose a cool place for temporary parking.
- Prevent strong impact, bumps, or scratches on paint film of the vehicle body. If any scratch, dent, or peeling is found on the top coat, repair it in time, preferably at a professional auto detailing shop.
- Do not touch the top coat with greasy hands or scrub it with a greasy cloth. Do not place tools or cloth contaminated by organic solvents on the vehicle body to avoid chemical reactions.
- Wax the vehicle top coat for protection once a month or when the body surface cannot resist water well, and go to a professional auto detailing shop for maintenance regularly (quarterly) to restore the brightness and luster of the body top coat in time.
- Use high-quality polishing agent and wax. If the polished surface of the vehicle body has been severely weathered, use a wax-free vehicle cleaning and polishing agent. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and preventive measures. The chrome-plated surface shall be polished and waxed as the paint surface.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances which will cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road on which anti-freeze has been scattered.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings and insect carcasses get stuck.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings or chemicals.
  - Vehicles visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently in the shade before washing it.

1. Use a water pipe to wash off loose dirt and all mud or saline-alkali substances at the bottom of the vehicle and sunken parts of wheels.
2. Clean the vehicle with a neutral washing agent mixed according to the manufacturer’ s instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
3. Rinse well: It forms markings when the washing agent dries. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse the parts properly.
4. In order to prevent water stains, wipe the vehicle body dry with a clean soft towel, and avoid wiping or pressing hard, otherwise the paint surface may be scratched.

REMINDER

- Do not use strongly alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents, or organic matters (gasoline, kerosene, volatile oil, or strong solvent) to clean the vehicle.
- When cleaning the combination lights, do not wipe their surface with chemical solvents such as gasoline, alcohol, lacquer thinner, thinner and carbon tetrachloride. Doing so will cause the combination light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Please replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in time. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

Some types of brushes, unfiltered water, or machine-defined rinse procedures in automatic car wash stations may scratch or damage the paint surface. The scratches reduce the durability and glossiness of the paint surface, especially for dark-colored vehicles. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the staff of the vehicle wash station for the safest wash procedure for the paint surface is a better choice.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- When cleaning the interior or exterior of the vehicle, do not allow water to flow directly into the dashboard, floor or nearby electrical components, as water may cause malfunction.
- Do not wash the floor of the vehicle with water to avoid corrosion of the vehicle body.

Carpet

- Clean carpets with a high-quality foam detergent.
- Firstly, use a vacuum cleaner to clean the dust as much as possible. There are several types of foam detergents that can be used. Some are filled in spray cans, and others are in powder or liquid forms, producing foam by mixing with water. Clean carpets with foam-soaked sponges or brushes and scrub them in circular motions.
- Do not use plain water only, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

Seat Belts

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Wipe seat belts with sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tears or cut marks.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt’ s strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with common household detergents.
- Check the door brake regularly. If obvious dust accumulation is found on the brake rod, wipe it with a wet soft cloth to remove dust on the surface.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use organic substances (for example, solvents, kerosene, alcohol, and gasoline) or acid or alkali solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new-type liquid car washer is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. If there is any spillage, immediately clean it thoroughly.

Interior Leather Trimmings

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth soaked with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean wet cloth to wipe off the residual detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.
- The seat shall be cleaned with foam leather cleaner and then wiped with a clean soft cloth.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, acid or alkali, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.
- Do not use liquid cleaning agent on leather seats, as water can easily seep into the inner layer of leather, resulting in surface bubbles or marks that are difficult to remove.
- If the seat is wet, use a soft towel or tissue paper to dry it in time, and do not use a hairdryer immediately.

Real Wood Trims

- It is recommended to wipe the dust on the surface with a soft dry cloth every day to maintain the normal luster of white cork. When wiping, do not use hard cloth to wipe directly, nor use acid or alkaline cleaning agents, which

will damage the paint surface on the white cork.

- Strictly avoid chemical agents (perfume, alcohol, cosmetics, tea, mineral water, grease, etc.) to contaminate real wood ornaments, which will cause the risk of cracking or glue opening of real wood ornaments.
- If there is contamination, wipe it immediately with paper towel or dry cloth to reduce the damage of chemicals to real wood.

Electroplated Trims

- It is recommended to use a soft towel to wipe the dust on the surface of the ornament to maintain the normal luster of the plating layer. When wiping, do not use hard cloth to wipe directly, nor use acid or alkaline cleaning agents.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If you want to carry out maintenance by yourself, make sure to correctly follow the steps specified in this chapter.
- It should be noted that incorrect and incomplete maintenance will affect the driving experience.
- This chapter only lists the instructions for some simple maintenance operations that the user can carry out. However, there are still many items that must be completed by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken during vehicle maintenance to prevent accidental injury. The following precautions must be observed.

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specialized spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning or adjusting the spark plug gap.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed; otherwise, the engine is excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommanded that take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- Just after driving, the temperature of engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, spark plug cover, oil and

CAUTION

other fluids is very high. Be careful not to touch them.

- If the engine is very hot, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cover to prevent burns.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is flameout when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Checks

The following items should be checked according to service conditions or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator and expansion tank should be checked at each charge.
- Windshield washer fluid - check the amount of washer fluid in the fluid reservoir once a month. If the washer fluid is frequently used due to bad weather, increase the frequency of checking.
- Windshield wipers - check the wiper condition once a month. If the wiper cannot clean the windshield completely, check if any damage such as wear and cracking exists.
- Brake fluid level - check the fluid level at least once a month.
- Brake pedal-Check whether the brake pedal operates freely and check whether the brake light switch limit pad is aged and damaged.
- EPB switch - check whether the switch functions well.
- Low-voltage battery - Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system - check the operation of the A/C unit weekly.
- Tires - check tire pressure monthly. Check the condition of wear and any embedded objects on the tire surface. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windshield defrosters: Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors - check whether the trunk lid and doors can be opened and closed normally and locked firmly.
- Horn - check whether the horn functions normally.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Drive belt

Check the condition of the drive belt for cracks or wear on the edges of the drive belt, which must be tested at the time and mileage recommended on the maintenance schedule.

Lights

Headlight Adjustment

- Headlights of new vehicles are aligned before their delivery. If the vehicle often carries a large load, headlights may need to be re-aligned. It is recommended that headlights be aligned by a BYD-authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of Lights

- After heavy rain or cleaning, fog may appear on the covers of combination lights, tail lights, or turn signals in side mirrors. This is similar to the condensation phenomenon of the windows on one side of the vehicle during rain, which does not indicate that your vehicle is faulty.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. Light covers are designed with holes for heat dissipation through convection with the surrounding environment. The larger the temperature difference, the more active the convection. In the process of convection, the water vapor in the air is inevitably brought inside lights. Due to the influence of sun exposure, convection, bulb heating, and other factors, the water vapor in the air is easy to condense into fog or water droplets on light surfaces with low temperatures. That is why the fog on light covers forms.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signal on the side mirror, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Sunroof Maintenance

- Wipe any dust or sand from the sunroof outer sealing strip with a wet cloth and do not scratch it, for that degrades its sealing performance.
- Wipe any dust or sand on the injection molding edge of the front glass with a wet cloth and do not scratch the sealing strip, for that degrades the sealing performance;
- Clean the front end of the rear glass frequently (after the front glass is fully opened) to remove dust, sand, leaves and other debris to prevent drain holes from blockage.
- Clean the guide rails on both sides and the front flume frequently to prevent dust, sand, leaves and other debris to prevent drain holes from blockage.
- When washing the vehicle, avoid aiming any high-pressure water guns directly at the sealing strip. This not only easily deforms or damages the sealing strip, but also easily causes water seeping into the vehicle;

- In winter, if the frozen sunroof is opened, the sealing strip or other parts may be damaged. The vehicle should first be preheated, and the HVAC system should be turned on to speed up the melting of snow and ice. Open the sunroof only after the vehicle is warmer. To avoid the sunroof from freezing again, dry the residual water on the sunroof.
- Do not fully open the sunroof on extremely bumpy roads, as the strong vibration may cause deformation of related components or even damage the motor. In addition, sunroof is not to be opened when it is raining or when the vehicle is being cleaned.

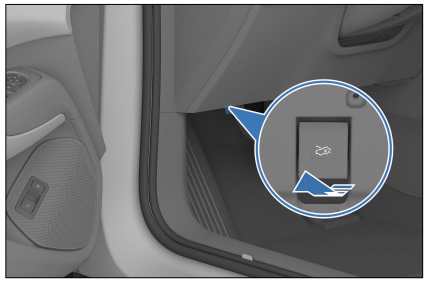
Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps to prevent deterioration of vehicle conditions and makes it easy for the next use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Refuel in time.
- Clean and dry the vehicle body thoroughly.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that the carpet and other trimmings are completely dry.
- Engage the parking brake. Shift the gear to P gear.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth so as not to contact the windshield.
- To reduce sticking, spray silicone lubricant on the sealing parts of all doors and the boot lid, and apply vehicle body wax on the paint surface where the sealing strips of doors and boot lid contact.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of porous material such as cotton cloth. Non-porous materials such as plastic cloth accumulate moisture and damage the body surface paint.
- If possible, start the vehicle regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Hood

Opening the Hood

1. Pull the handle on the left under the dashboard twice. The hood unlocks and opens slightly.



2. To open the hood: Lift thehood up,

3. To close the hood: When closing thehood, lower it to a height of about 30cm above the front grille and let go of both hands to let it fall freely for locking.

4. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.

REMINDER

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the hood or release it from a high position.

Engine Maintenance

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle runs in EV mode for a long time, the engine may be automatically started by itself till the load of canister turns to be normal.

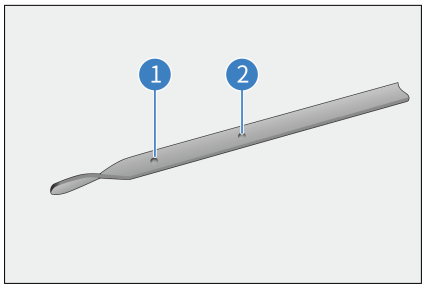
Engine Oil

- The main function of the oil is to lubricate and cool the inside of the engine, and it plays a major role in maintaining the engine in proper working condition.

Check Engine Oil

- Check oil dipstick

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine till it reaches the normal working temperature, and then shut down the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10min, remove the cover plate on the right side, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and oil condition, and check whether the oil level is between ① and ②. Add or replace oil as required.
3. Insert the oil dipstick back.



- When the low oil pressure warning light illuminates, please add oil in time.

Instructions for cylinder cleaning

- In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

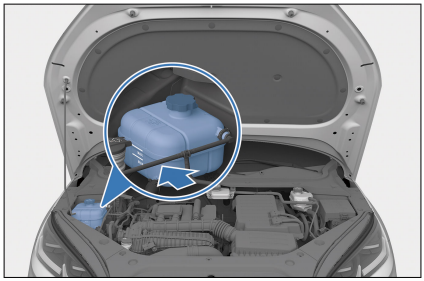
1. The OK lamp on the instrument is on, the working mode is EV, the running mode is ECO, the engine is not running, and the gear is manually switched to "N";
2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning function.

Coolant System

Coolant selection

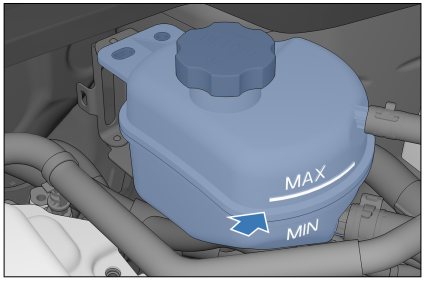
Engine coolant auxiliary tank

- The fluid level meets the requirement when it is between the MAX (maximum fluid level) and MIN (minimum fluid level) marks of the expansion tank.



Motor controller coolant type*

- The fluid level meets the requirement when it is between the MAX (maximum fluid level) and MIN (minimum fluid level) marks of the expansion tank.



- If below the lower scale mark, add coolant to raise the level to the upper (MAX) scale mark. Check the cooling system for leaks.
- Always use the coolant with specifications same as the original manufacturer's product. No admixture is required. Different brands and types of refrigerant should not be mixed.

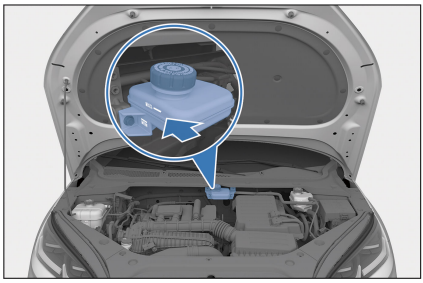
REMINDER

- Never add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system. The additives may be incompatible with coolant or motor components.
- Before opening the cover of the auxiliary water tank, it is necessary to confirm that the motor, the high-voltage electronic control integrated module, the auxiliary water tank and the radiator have been cooled.
- Do not open the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box when filling the coolant.
- Fill the coolant with a special tool to prevent the coolant from flowing into the fuse box.

Braking System

- The liquid level in the reservoir shall be checked monthly and the brake fluid shall be replaced according to the travel time and mileage specified in the periodic maintenance table.
- Be sure to use the same specifications of brake fluid as the original manufacturer. And different types of brake fluid cannot be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX"

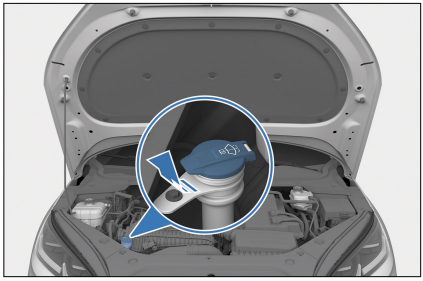
(maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.



- If the fluid level is at or below the lowest limit (MIN) mark, it is necessary to check the brake system for leakage and wear of brake friction plates.

Washer

- During normal use, check the fluid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least once a month.
- In bad weather, if the scrubber is used frequently, check the fluid level in the scrubber reservoir each time the vehicle is stopped for charging.
- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When you add washer fluid to the fluid reservoir again, use a piece of clean cloth dipped with windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade, which helps keep the blade edge in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washing fluid.

Fuel filter

Replace the brake fluid according to the driving time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance schedule.

- When the fuel is contaminated, it is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 10,000 km or every 6 months since the filter is easier to be blocked.
- It is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for new fuel filter. Because there is pressure in the fuel system, if all the oil lines are not properly handled, the fuel may spill out and cause danger.
- If you have used more than one barrel of impure fuel, the filter should be changed earlier.
- If the filter is found to be blocked by dirt, it is recommended to contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile for inspection or replacement of the filter.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be carried out by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- The following can be done to ensure effective operation of the A/C system.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects and dust accumulated on the front surface. These deposits hinder the airflow and reduce the cooling effect.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on once a week for at least 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- The system recovers the refrigerant for reuse. Whenever the air conditioning system is serviced, it should be required to ensure that the refrigerant recirculation system is used, and the release of refrigerant into the atmosphere will pollute the environment.
- If the refrigerant needs to be filled, the refrigerant recovery and filling machine must be used for recovery and filling, and the refrigerant oil and refrigerant meeting the specification requirements shall be used, otherwise the air conditioning system may be damaged;
- Refrigerant oil type: POE;
- Refrigerant type: R1234yf.

Wiper Blades

The rubber strip of the wiper blade is made of synthetic rubber, which is a vulnerable part. The wiper blade may be damaged in the service environment of various vehicles and by the driver's use habits. Therefore, in order to ensure the service life of the wiper blade and the driving safety of the vehicle, pay attention to the following precautions:

- Remove the ice on the windshield surface with a special ice scraper, rather than with the wiper blades.
- Do not wipe on dirty, oily or waxy windshield surfaces.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not wipe dust, sand, insects, and other objects on the windshield surface.
- Do not wax the windshield when washing the vehicle and maintaining the body paint, as the wax layer reflects light in poor light, consequently affecting the sight and driving safety. After washing the car, the wiper blade should be rinsed with pure water, and the wax layer on the windshield glass should be removed with a special glass wax layer cleaner.
- Do not wash the wiper blade directly with a water gun to prevent damage to the wiper blade due to excessive water pressure.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean the windshield and wiper blades regularly (once every one or two weeks).
- It is recommended to wipe the wiper regularly (once every one to two days). When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet. (When there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with special cleaning agent.
- Wipe the windshield with a rag in time if it is attached with soil and dead insects.

- Maintain the windshield in time in case of scratches by gravel knocking (it is recommended to use resin products for the windshield repair, and replace the windshield in case of many or excessive scratches).
- Replace the wiper blade regularly, and an interval of six months is recommended.
- Lift the wiper arms up prior to cleaning the windshield. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Enter the multimedia vehicle maintenance information interface, open the front wiper maintenance, and the wiper rotates out.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and wiper blade assembly.

Tire

- In order to drive safely, tire type and size must be suitable for the vehicle. The tire tread should be in good condition and the tire pressure should be within the standard range.
- The following is detailed description of how to check the tire pressure, tire damage and wear, and the operation method of tire rotation.

WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Inflation

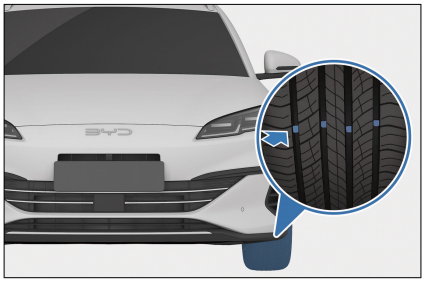
- Keeping tires properly inflated provides the best combination of maneuverability, tread-wear life, and driving comfort.
- Driving with underinflated tires leads to uneven tire wear, affect maneuverability and energy consumption, and even may cause air leakage due to overheating.
- Driving with overinflated tires reduces the comfort of the vehicle, and is also more likely to be damaged due to uneven road surfaces. In severe cases, there is a risk of tire burst, which seriously threatens the safety of the vehicle. At the same time, it also leads to uneven wear of tires, thus affecting the service life of tires.
- In a cold state (the vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring device), whether to inflate the tires depends on the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Measure the tire pressures when the tires are cold. This means the measurement should be carried out at least three hours after stopping the vehicle. If you have to drive before measuring the tire pressures, as long as the driving distance does not exceed 1.6 km, the tires can still be considered to be in a cold state.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3~0.4 bar) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- Recommended Tire Pressure (located on the driver's side door frame) The label plate indicates the recommended cold tire pressure.
- Tubeless tires can self-seal punctures. However, as leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully identified as soon as the tire begins to depressurize.

Checks

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires should be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side, or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.
- Tire treads are cast with wear bars. When the tread is even with the wear bar, its thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.



- Replace the tire if the tread is worn to the extent that the wear mark is exposed, in which case the tire performance is greatly lost.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment can also help reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check wheel alignment.
- The tires of a vehicle has been balanced in the factory, but tires need to be re-balanced after driving for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration while driving at high speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low speeds, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and check the tires.
- Be sure to balance the tire again after it is repaired.
- When installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.

WARNING

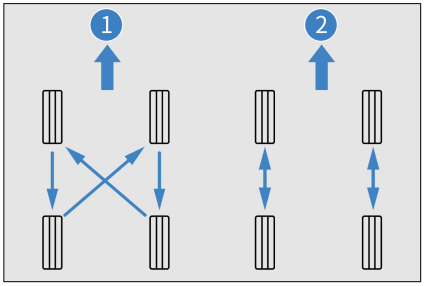
- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminum rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers to keep balance.

Tire Rotation

In order to make tire wear the same and prolong the service life of tires, it is recommended to check the wear on the

inside and outside of the tire every 10,000 km and perform tire rotation regularly, conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment as well.

- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire is used for the vehicle.
- When purchasing and replacing tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", indicating those tires can be rotated in only one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tire rotation. See the illustration.



- After tire replacement, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

Replacing Tires and Wheels

- The original tires of this vehicle are selected to maximize the performance of the vehicle, and can provide you with the best combination of maneuverability, riding comfort, and service life.
- It is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for new original tires.
- If radial tires with different dimensions, load range, rated speed and maximum cold tire pressure (marked on the side of the tire) from that of the original tires are used for replacement, or radial tires and diagonal tires are used at the same time, the braking capacity, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy of the vehicle are reduced.
- The installation of unsuitable tires can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will severely affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheels need to be replaced, make sure that the specifications of the new wheels are consistent with those of the original ones. New wheels can be purchased from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Before replacing wheels, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

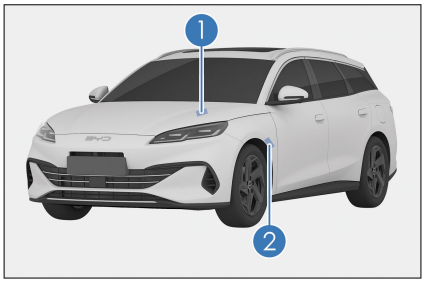
Fuses

All circuits on the vehicle are equipped with fuses to prevent short circuits or overloads. These fuses are installed in the distribution box, which are the front compartment distribution box, the instrument panel distribution box

and the rear compartment distribution box. Fuse stickers are attached to the front cabin distribution box and dashboard distribution box. The labeling makes it possible to determine the correspondence between fuses and electrical components.

①Front compartment fuse box

②Dashboard PDB

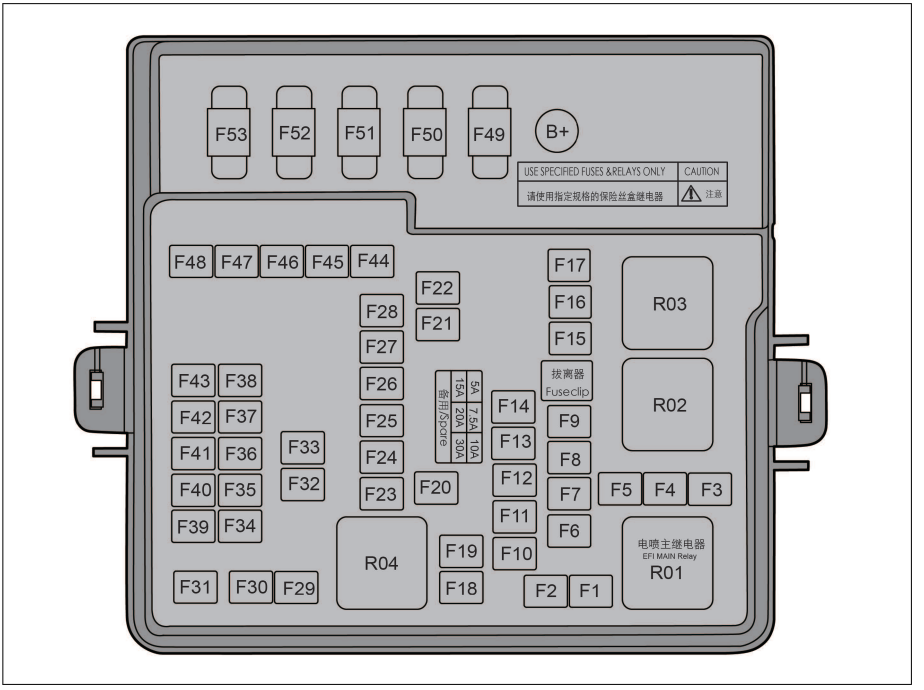


- The Under-Hood PDB is located on the left side of the front compartment. Open the front compartment cover and front compartment cover plate, find the front compartment power distribution box, and press the latch on the upper cover to open it.
- Dashboard PDB is located on the left side of the instrument panel. First remove the left end plate of the instrument panel, and then remove the lower fender shield of the dashboard to repair the fuse of the dashboard.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If you do not have a substitution fuse with an amperage matching the circuit, you should replace it with a fuse with a lower amperage.

REMINDER

- Do not use any fuse with an amperage higher than the rated value, or any other object to replace fuses. Doing so can result in serious damage and potentially cause a fire.
- After the fuse is blown, it is recommended to check or replace it at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Under-Hood PDB Nameplate

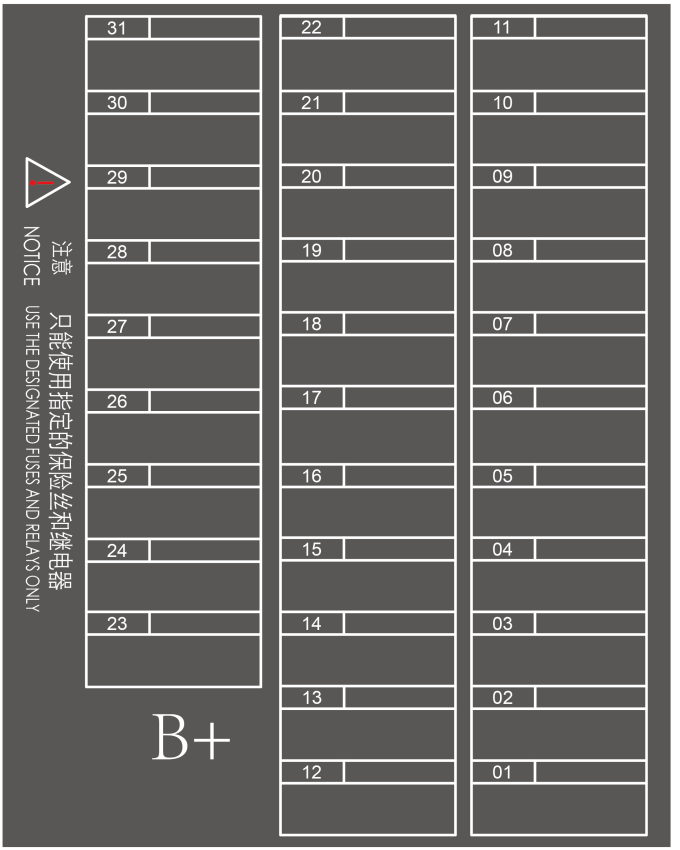


No.	Ampere (A)	Protected Component or Circuit
F1	40	Electronic fuel injection system
F2	-	-
F3	10	Fuel injector
F4	30	Engine ECU
F5	20	Ignition coil
F6	15	Solenoid valve
F7	10	Oxygen sensor
F8	-	-
F9	5	Engine ECU
F10	15	Standby power

No.	Ampere (A)	Protected Component or Circuit
F11	10	USB
F12	7.5	Compressor
F13	10	Motor controller
F14	-	-
F15	5	AGS
F16	40	Towing power supply
F17	-	-
F18	-	-
F19	-	-
F20	-	-
F21	30	Front wiper
F22	30	Rear windshield defroster
F23	10	Vehicle control unit
F24	10	Electrically controlled coolant pump
F25	10	BMS
F26	-	-
F27	-	-
F28	-	-
F29	-	-
F30	60	ESC
F31	15	Standby power
F32	-	-
F33	5	BMS
F34	15	Steering Wheel Heating
F35	5	Rear body controller
F36	7.5	Engine ECU

No.	Ampere (A)	Protected Component or Circuit
F37	7.5	DMS
F38	10	SRS
F39	7.5	ADAS
F40	-	-
F41	5	EPS
F42	5	ESC
F43	-	-
F44	60	ESC
F45	40	Blower
F46	-	-
F47	-	-
F48	10	Rear Wiper
F49	-	-
F50	70	CEPS
F51	70/80	Electronic fan
F52	60	Engine Water Pump
F53	-	-

Dashboard PDB Nameplate



No.	Ampere (A)	Protected Component or Circuit
01	-	-
02	-	-
03	10	Alcohol interlock
04	10	Diagnostic port
05	5	Instrument Cluster
06	5	High-frequency receiving module

No.	Ampere (A)	Protected Component or Circuit
07	-	-
08	20	Multimedia system
09	-	-
10	7.5	ADAS
11	10	Combination switch
12	30	Rear body controller
13	30	Rear body controller
14	5	Brake light switch
15	10	Wireless charger
16	5	Vehicle control unit
17	5	On-board charger
18	10	Steering shaft lock
19	30	Rear body controller
20	30	Rear body controller
21	30	Left front electric seat
22	30	Right front electric seat
23	10	USB
24	20	Towing power supply
25	-	-
26	-	-
27	-	-
28	-	-
29	-	-
30	-	-
31	-	-

REMINDER

- When the vehicle configuration is different, the ampere value used by some fuses (such as multimedia) is different, and the real object shall prevail when repairing and replacing.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

REMINDER

- If the vehicle needs to be stopped urgently due to fault, please wear the reflective vest provided with the vehicle in time.

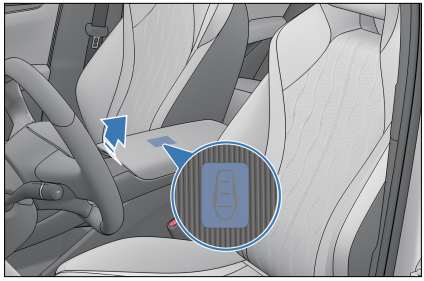
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the electronic intelligent key indicator does not flash, and the vehicle cannot be started with the start function, the battery may be exhausted. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery replacement as soon as possible. In this case, the vehicle can be started in the power-off mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Keep the key away from magnetic fields.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the low-voltage battery.

1. Unlock with the mechanical key.
2. Depress the brake pedal and meanwhile press the START/ STOP button, and the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, with a beep from the speaker.
3. Press the electronic smart key close to the power-off mode identification within 30s after the speaker sounds, and the speaker will sound again. At this time, the warning light of the smart key system will go out, and the vehicle can be started.



- The power-off mode indicator is located in the front of the center armrest storage box.

4. Start the vehicle within five seconds after the speaker beeps again.

If the Vehicle Cannot Power on

General Inspection

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct starting procedure and check whether the fuel is sufficient. At the same time, check whether the vehicle can be started with the spare key. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. In this case, have the key checked by a BYD authorized service provider. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key system may fail. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the vehicle does not respond when the key is pressed

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to observe whether the vehicle or the instrument responds.
2. Checking the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
3. If the battery connector is normal, turn on the front interior light. If the interior light is not bright or the light is dim, it means that the battery power is insufficient, and it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
4. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

If the motor drives the engine to rotate at normal speed but the engine cannot run:

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine fails to start, repeated starts may result in engine oil spillage, failure of the BMS battery manager module, or failure of starting-related modules such as the generator module.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

Start the engine with oil spillage

- If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts.
- If the engine is flooded, the following operations can be performed manually:

  1. When the OK indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is at a standstill, then manually switch to the N gear.
  2. Manually and continuously pull up the EPB switch, press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning function.

- If the engine still cannot be started after 5S, wait for several minutes and start again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

REMINDER

- If continuous engine starting fails, the instrument reports ”Engine starting failure,please drive to the safe area to check”. Do not try to start the engine again, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Vehicle Stops Abnormally

- Slowly reduce the speed and keep driving in a straight line. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place. Start the vehicle again. If the vehicle starts normally and there is no abnormal alarm, it can continue to drive. If the vehicle cannot be started, it is recommended to contact the authorized service shop of BYD Automobile for inspection.

REMINDER

If there is little fuel in the fuel tank, it is normal to repeat the startup and shutdown cycle; if it is identified that there is little fuel in the fuel tank, the engine starts and shut down repeatedly, thus failing to start. If the fuel in the tank is used up before refueling, the engine frequently starts and stops for some

REMINDER

time. However, after the fuel pipe is filled with fuel, the engine enters the normal operation state.

If the Engine is Overheated

If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates a high level and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light switch, pull the EPB switch, and press P gear button. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. Stop the engine if the "High Engine Coolant Temperature" warning light comes on. If there is a "grinning" sound in the front compartment of the engine and the coolant sprays out, open the engine hood after the steam subsides. If no coolant is discharged, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the stop. If the fan is not working, stop the engine.

REMINDER

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorized service provider for help.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to open the expansion tank cap after the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value.When the engine is running, add coolant into the expansion tank to the upper scale mark. Cover the expansion tank cap properly and start the engine for 2 to 3 cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value, check the level in the expansion tank again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized service provider for inspection immediately.

WARNING

- To avoid serious injury caused by high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the auxiliary tank cover when the engine and radiator are hot.

When parking, do not use the air conditioner for a long time, because the air conditioner will cause the engine speed to be too high, causing accidents or overheating of the engine causing fire.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organization you joined for roadside assistance.

CAUTION

- Do not allow other vehicles to pull your car with only ropes or chains.

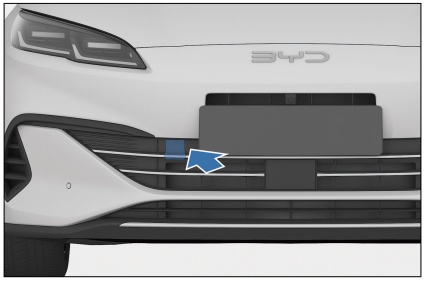
Common towing methods include:

- Flatbed device
  - When the vehicle is faulty and needs towing, a flatbed trailer is the best choice. Towing the vehicle with front or rear wheels on the ground may compromise high-voltage components.

Towing Hook

- The position to fasten the front towing hook is shown in the figure:

1. Slightly pry up with a straight lever or a rocker to open the plug cover of the traction hook;
2. Install the towing hook in the towing hole.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, it is recommended to contact professional rescue agencies or call the customer service hotline for help.
- In case of emergency, if the vehicle needs to be towed for rescue, please observe the following precautions to avoid vehicle damage or even personal injury:
  - The towing vehicle is in good condition, the towed vehicle is in "N" gear, and the towing speed shall not exceed 5km/h;
  - Catapult towing is prohibited;
  - The vehicle being towed shall not carry persons except the driver;
  - Both the tractor and the tractor to be pulled should turn on the emergency warning light;
  - Only the in-vehicle towing hook can be used. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.
  - The distance between the tractor and the tractor should be greater than 4m and less than 10m;
  - The width and weight of the tractor to be pulled shall not be greater than the width and weight of the vehicle;
  - When towing the vehicle, it should be ensured that the surrounding area is spacious and unobstructed, and no person is near the towing device;
  - When the vehicle is untrapped, the direction of the vehicle is controlled to be consistent with the direction of the towing force, and it is forbidden to drag from the side or vertical angle;
  - The driver of the towed vehicle must sit in the vehicle to control the vehicle, and the steering system and braking system of the vehicle must be in normal condition.

WARNING

- If RCTA judges that other vehicles approaching from the rear are likely to collide with the vehicle, RCTA will light up the warning lights on the blind areas of the exterior mirrors on both sides to remind the driver to reduce the possibility of collision.
- If the steering system or braking system of the tractor fails, please contact the professional rescue or call the customer service hotline for help. Do not directly tow the rescue.

If a Tire Goes Flat

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Drive the vehicle off the busy road to a safe place. Park on solid, flat ground and avoid highway forks. Park on solid, flat ground.
- Please stop the vehicle according to the following operations:

1. Step on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily, and then press the "P" gear button to switch the gear to "P" gear, and the instrument "P" gear indicator lights up.
2. Observe whether "Electronic parking has been started" appears on the instrument panel. If not, try to pull up the EPB manually.
3. START/STOP Button

- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle with flat tires. Even if the vehicle is driven for a short distance, the tires are damaged beyond repair.

In-Vehicle Tools

- These tools are stored in a tool box under the trunk cover flap.

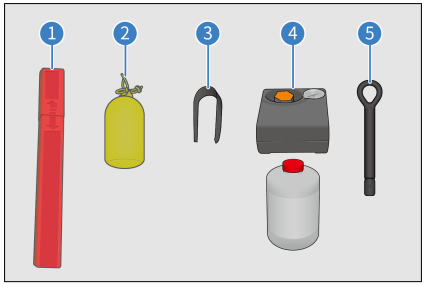
①Warning triangle

②Reflective vest

③Removal clamp for wheel nut cap

④Tire repair device

⑤Towing Hook



- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the warning triangle

REMINDER

- Before repairing the vehicle while stopped on a public road, remember to place a warning triangle in the lane where your vehicle is located, 100-200 m

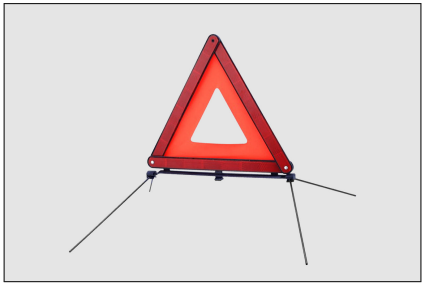
REMINDER

behind the vehicle, red side facing vehicles oncoming from behind, in order to warn them and prevent accidents. After the repair, recover the warning triangle for future use.

The warning triangle is used to warn drivers of vehicles coming from behind and to avoid risk of collision with the vehicle ahead being parked or repaired due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Open the warning triangle to form a closed triangle.
3. Release its supports to create a pattern as shown.



Using tire repair device

- The tire repair device can be used to seal small cuts, especially in the tread pattern. The tire repair device is only for emergency purposes so that you can drive the vehicle to the nearest maintenance center.

WARNING

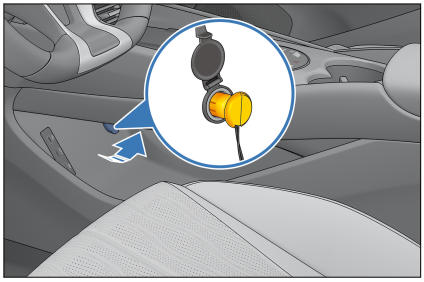
- The tire repair kit is only suitable for minor damages of tires. If a wheel is damaged, tyre puncture sealant kit is prohibited.
- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take the necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

In case of contact with tire sealant:

- If tire sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tire sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting and seek medical attention immediately.

Usage of the Tire Repair Device

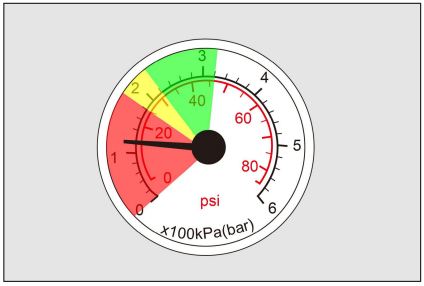
- Please refer to the labels on the inflator and the tire repair fluid bottle for the detailed usage of the tire repair device.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle’ s 12V socket, start the vehicle, and switch on the inflator. The tire sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tire along with air.



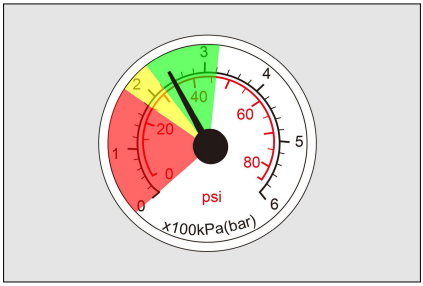
REMINDER

- Make sure the inflator switch is off when plugging the power supply into the 12V socket in the vehicle.
- The inflator can only be turned on for up to 10 minutes.

- Observe the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 180 kPa within 10 minutes (red area shown in the figure), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



- If the tire pressure reaches 180~320 kPa (green and yellow areas shown in the illustration), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, so that the tire sealant is evenly distributed within the tire.



- Stop and check the repaired tire, and observe again the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 220 kPa, drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
  - If the tire pressure is between 130~220 kPa, inject the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure readings on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 130 kPa, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Using tire repair device on damaged tires is only an emergency solution. Please change the tires at a professional repair center as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that the tires contain tire sealant.
- After using the tire repair device, it is recommended that you purchase new tire sealant and inflation hose at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.

REMINDER

- Do not exceed 80 km/h and replace the flat tire as soon as possible. Do not continue driving in case of strong vibration, unstable driving performance or noise during driving.
- When the tire sealant is about to expire (see the label on the can for the exact date), replace it with a new one.

08 SPECIFICATIONS

Data

Vehicle Data

Vehicle Dimensions

Item	Data
Length (mm)	4840
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1875
Height (mm)	1505
Wheelbase (mm)	2790
Front track (mm)	1620
Rear track (mm)	1620
Front overhang (mm)	975
Rear overhang (mm)	1075
Approach angle (°)	13
Departure angle (°)	14

Vehicle Mass

Item	Data
Curb weight (kg)	1710/1805
Curb weight - front axle load (kg)	1008/1069
Curb weight - rear axle load (kg)	652/706
Max. allowable total mass (kg)	2035/2150
Front axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg)	1108/1169
Rear axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg)	927/981
Number of occupants (persons)	5

Engine Data

Item	Data
Engine Model	BYD472QA
Engine Type	Spark ignition
Displacement(L)	1.498
Maximum net engine power(kW/rpm)	72/6000
Max. net torque(N · m/rpm)	122/4000~4500
Emission standard	Euro 6

High-Voltage Battery

Item	Data
High-voltage battery type	Lithium iron phosphate battery
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	37.5/54

Drive Motor

Item	Data
Drive Motor Model	TZ200XYE
Drive Motor Type	Permanent Magnet Synchronous Motor
Drive Type	Front wheel drive
Rated power/revolving speed/torque (kW/RPM/ N · m)	60/4775/120
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/ N · m)	145/15000/300

Vehicle Power Performance

Item	Data
Maximum design speed (km/h)	180
Max. gradeability (%)	30

Vehicle Economic Efficiency

Item	Data
Fuel consumption (g/km) (WLTC)	1.24/1.56

Wheels and Tires

Item	Data	
Tire specification	225/50R18	225/55R17
Maintain proper tire pressure (Kpa).	250	
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	⩽10	

Wheel Alignment Parameters (under curb weight)

Item	Data
Front wheel camber (°)	-0.68±0.75
Front toe-in (°)	-0.03±0.08
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	12.56±0.75
Kingpin caster angle (°)	4.91±0.75
Rear wheel camber (°)	-0.92°±0.50°
Rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.25±0.08

Technical Data of brake system

Item	Data
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1-5
Front brake disc thickness (mm)	26/28
Rear brake disc thickness (mm)	12
Thickness of front brake pad (mm)	8
Thickness of rear brake pad (mm)	6.5

Seat Data:

Item	Data
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seat (cushion depth measured)	60mm forward of the rearmost position of the rail
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	25°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	The design position is 12 ° forward and 40 ° backward, the sliding rail is 200mm forward and 60mm backward, and the sliding rail angle is 4.5 °.
Forward and backward positions of rear seats (cushion depth measured)	Front and rear non-adjustable, integrated fixed large cushion
Backrest angles of rear seats (cushion depth measured)	30°
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	Non-adjustable backrest, 30°

Fluid Data

Item	Data	
Engine oil model	C5 0W-20	
Engine oil filling quantity (L)	3.3 (replace the filter); 3.1 (do not replace the filter)	
EHS special oil model	EHSF-2LV	
Filling Quantity of EHS special oil (L)	3	
Brake fluid type	DOT4/HZY6	DOT4/HZY6
Brake fluid amount (ML)	1100±50	1050±50
Motor controller coolant type	Ethylene glycol type anti-rust antifreeze: Freezing point of antifreeze -40 °C	
Motor coolant amount (L)	4.3±0.5	
Engine coolant type	Ethylene glycol type anti-rust antifreeze: Freezing point of antifreeze -40 °C	
Engine coolant amount (L)	6.9±0.5	

CAUTION

- The recommended oil type has been tested and approved by BYD, and the use of other oil types

CAUTION

may affect the performance of the vehicle, or even cause vehicle failure or component damage.

Information

Vehicle Identification

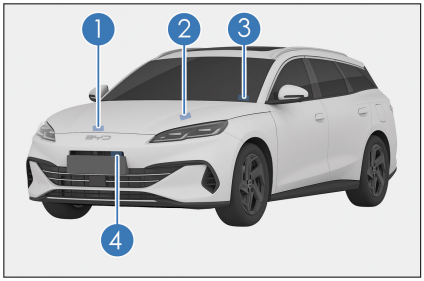
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

①VIN attached to the lower side of the lock ring of the front cabin cover

②VIN is attached to the transmission housing.

③VIN attached on the front anti-impact beam

④VIN attached on the front anti-impact beam

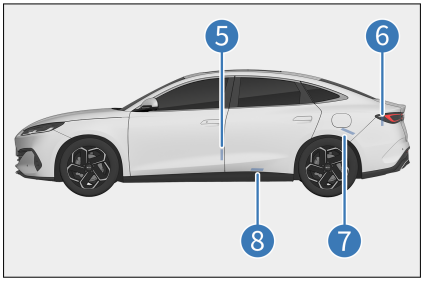


⑤VIN attached to inner sheet metal surface of front left door

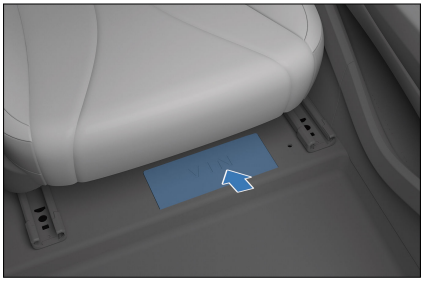
⑥VIN label is attached to the sheet metal on the back door.

⑦VIN attached on the left rear wheel envelope

⑧VIN attached on the left rear door sill



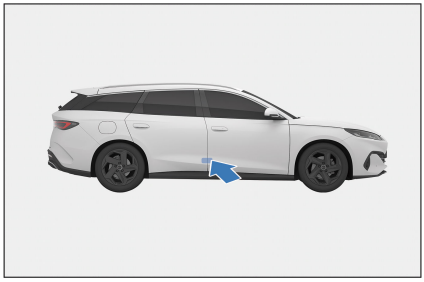
VIN is engraved on the lower beam of the front passenger seat.



Note: The VIN can be read in the upper right corner of the page for the corresponding model after connecting the VDS. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.

Vehicle Nameplate

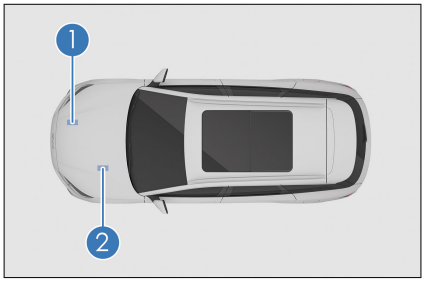
The vehicle nameplate is attached to the side sheet metal surface at the lower end of the right B-pillar, and contains the following information: Company name, brand name, manufacturing country, vehicle model, number of passengers, manufacturing year, driving motor model, peak power of driving motor, rated voltage of power battery system, rated capacity of power battery system, vehicle identification code, maximum allowable total mass.



Model and Number of Engine and Driving Motor

①The engine model and number are engraved on the side of the exhaust side of the cylinder.

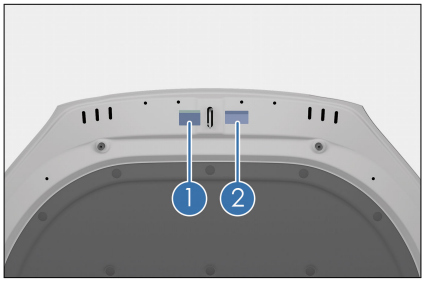
②The model and number of the front drive motor are engraved on the front drive motor housing.



Warning Labels

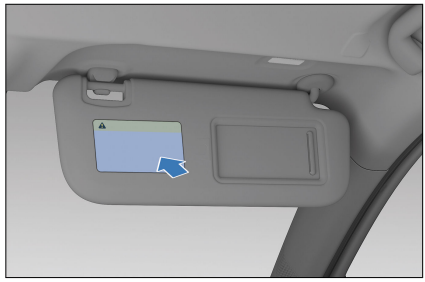
① A/C system and cooling fan labels

② Battery location label



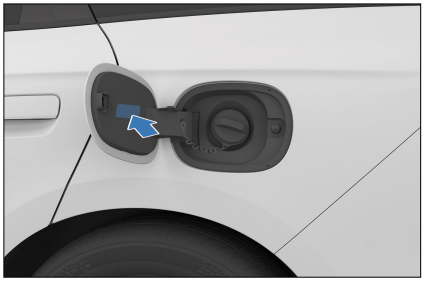
The side airbag warning labels are pasted on the lower part of left and right B pillars.

The airbag warning label is printed on the right sun visor.

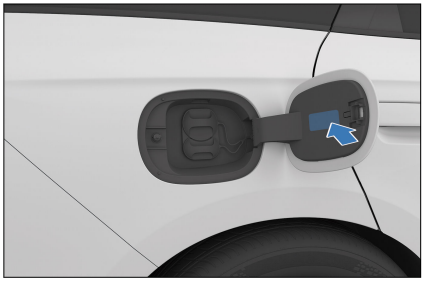


The tire pressure label is pasted on the lower part of the left B pillar.

The oil level indicator is pasted on the inner side of the fuel filler hatch.

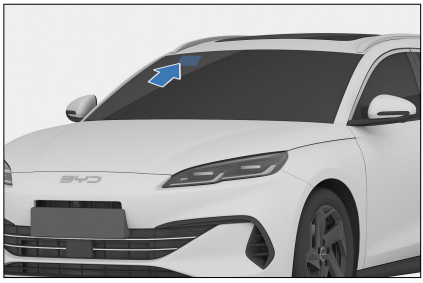


The warning label is pasted on the inner side of the charging port cover.



Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windshield.



CAUTION

- The electronic labels should not overlap with the glass frame

CAUTION

and other objects when they are pasted.

Numerics

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

V

W

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

术语	全称	术语	全称
ECO	经济模式	NORMAL	普通模式
SPORT	运动模式	VTOL	车辆对排插放电连接装置
AVH	自动驻车	ABS	防抱死制动系统
VDC	车身动态控制系统	CST	舒适停车